

PROSPECTUS



EMERALD BIOSCIENCE, INC.

Up to 67,400,000 of Units

We are offering, on a “best efforts” basis, up to 67,400,000 units at a price per unit of \$0.25, each unit consisting of one share of our common stock (“common stock”) and one warrant to purchase one share of common stock. The warrants will expire five years from the date of issuance. The units will not be issued or certificated. Instead, the shares of common stock and the warrants underlying the units will be issued separately and may be resold separately, although they will have been purchased together in this offering. There is no minimum number of units required to be purchased, and subscriptions, once received and accepted, are irrevocable. Because there is no minimum offering amount required as a condition to closing in this offering, the actual public offering amount and proceeds to us, if any, are not presently determinable and may be substantially less than all of the units offered hereby.

We are offering the units on a self-underwritten basis which means our officers and directors will attempt to sell the units in reliance on the safe harbor from broker-dealer registration under Rule 3a4-1 of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended (the “Exchange Act”). This prospectus will permit our officers and directors to sell the units directly to the public. We will not pay any commission or other compensation to our officers and directors related to the sale of the units. All funds that we raise from the offering will be immediately available for our use and will not be returned to investors. We do not have any arrangements to place the funds received from the sale of units in the offering in an escrow, trust or similar account.

The offering will end on December 31, 2019, unless all of the units are sold before that date, we extend the offering another 30 days or we otherwise decide to terminate the offering early or cancel it, in each case in our sole discretion. If we extend the offering, we will provide that information in an amendment to this prospectus. If we close the offering early or cancel it, including during any extended offering period, we may do so without notice to investors, although if we cancel the offering we will promptly return any funds investors may already have paid. We will bear the expenses relating to the registration of the units.

There is no established trading market for the warrants, and we do not expect an active trading market to develop. We do not intend to list the warrants on any securities exchange or other trading market. Without an active trading market, the liquidity of the warrants will be limited.

Investing in our securities involves a high degree of risk. You should review carefully the risks and uncertainties described under the heading “Risk Factors” beginning on page 4 of this prospectus, and under similar headings in any amendments or supplements to this prospectus.

	<u>Per Unit</u>	<u>Total</u>
Proceeds to us, before expenses	\$ 0.25	\$ 16,850,000

Neither the Securities and Exchange Commission nor any state securities commission has approved or disapproved of these securities or determined if this prospectus is truthful or complete. Any representation to the contrary is a criminal offense.

The date of this prospectus is November 13, 2019

TABLE OF CONTENTS

	<u>PAGE</u>
Prospectus Summary	3
Risk Factors	4
Forward-Looking Statements	29
Use of Proceeds	30
Dividend Policy	30
Dilution	31
Capitalization	31
Plan of Distribution	32
Description of Securities	36
Business	37
Description of Property	54
Legal Proceedings	54
Market for Common Equity and Related Stockholder Matters	55
Management's Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations	56
Management	63
Executive Compensation	67
Certain Relationships and Related Transactions and Director Independence	73
Experts	76
Legal Matters	76
Interests of Named Experts and Counsel	76
Where You Can Find Additional Information	76
Index to Consolidated Financial Statements	F-1

[Table of Contents](#)

You should rely only on the information contained in this prospectus. We have not authorized any other person to provide you with information that is different from that contained in this prospectus. If anyone provides you with different or inconsistent information, you should not rely on it. We take no responsibility for, and can provide no assurance as to the reliability of, any other information that others may give you. You should assume that the information contained in this prospectus is accurate only as of the date of this prospectus, regardless of the time of delivery of this prospectus or of any sale of our securities. Our business, financial condition, results of operations and prospects may have changed since that date.

PROSPECTUS SUMMARY

This summary highlights selected information contained elsewhere in this prospectus. This summary does not contain all the information that you should consider before investing in our securities. You should carefully read the entire prospectus including “Risk Factors,” “Management’s Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations” and our Financial Statements, before making an investment decision.

In this prospectus, unless otherwise specified, the terms “we,” “us,” “our,” “Company” and “Emerald Bioscience” mean Emerald Bioscience, Inc., a Nevada corporation, and our wholly-owned subsidiaries.

Corporate Overview

We are a biopharmaceutical company targeting the discovery, development and commercialization of cannabinoid-based therapeutics through a number of license agreements with the University of Mississippi (“UM”) holds the only contract to cultivate cannabis for research purposes on behalf of the Federal Government of the United States since 1968, and it has significant expertise in cannabis cultivation and the extraction, separation, processing and manufacture of cannabis extracts as well as the chemistry and physiology of cannabinoid molecules. We were established as, and continue to be, a development and commercialization partner of UM, working to bring the University’s proprietary cannabinoid molecules through the development process.

Corporate Information

Our principal executive offices are located at 130 North Marina Drive, Long Beach, CA 90803. Our telephone number is (949) 336-3443. Our website address is <http://emeraldbio.life>. The information on, or that can be accessed through, our website is not part of this prospectus.

[Table of Contents](#)

RISK FACTORS

Any investment in our securities involves a high degree of risk. Investors should carefully consider the risks described below and all of the information contained in this prospectus before deciding whether to purchase our securities. Our business, financial condition or results of operations could be materially adversely affected by these risks if any of them actually occur. Our common stock is quoted on the OTCQB under the symbol "EMBI". This market is extremely limited and the prices quoted are not a reliable indication of the value of our common stock. As of the date of this prospectus, there has been very limited trading of shares of our common stock. If and when our common stock is traded, the trading price could decline due to any of these risks, and an investor may lose all or part of his or her investment. Some of these factors have affected our financial condition and operating results in the past or are currently affecting us. This prospectus also contains forward-looking statements that involve risks and uncertainties. Our actual results could differ materially from those anticipated in these forward-looking statements as a result of certain factors, including the risks described below and elsewhere in this prospectus.

Risks Related to this Offering:

You will experience immediate and substantial dilution in the book value per share of the common stock you purchase.

Because the price per unit being offered will be higher than the book value per share of our common stock, you will suffer substantial dilution in the net tangible book value of the common stock you acquire in this offering. See the section titled "Dilution" below for a more detailed discussion of the dilution you will incur if you purchase units in this offering.

There is no public market for the warrants to purchase shares of our common stock being included in the units offered in this offering.

There is no public trading market for the warrants included as part of the units being offered in this offering, and we do not expect a market to develop. In addition, we do not intend to apply to list the warrants on any national securities exchange or other nationally recognized trading system. Without an active market, the liquidity of the warrants will be limited, and you may not be able to resell your warrants. If your warrants cannot be resold, you will have to depend upon any appreciation in the value of our common stock over the exercise price of the warrants in order to realize a return on your investment in the warrants.

Except as otherwise provided in the warrants, holders of our warrants will not have the rights or privileges of a holder of our common stock, including any voting rights, until such holders exercise their warrants and acquire our common stock.

Except as otherwise provided in the warrants, holders of our warrants will not have the rights or privileges of a holder of our common stock, including any voting rights, until such holders exercise their warrants and acquire our common stock. As a result, absent exercise of the warrants, holders of the warrants will not have the ability to vote their shares underlying the warrants, which may limit the influence that investors in our offering may have over the outcome of matters submitted to our stockholders for a vote.

Because our management will have broad discretion and flexibility in how the net proceeds from this offering are used, we may use the net proceeds in ways in which you disagree.

We currently intend to use the net proceeds from this offering for general corporate purposes, including working capital. We have not allocated specific amounts of the net proceeds from this offering for any of the foregoing purposes. Accordingly, our management will have significant discretion and flexibility in applying the net proceeds of this offering. You will be relying on the judgment of our management with regard to the use of these net proceeds, and you will not have the opportunity, as part of your investment decision, to assess whether the net proceeds are being used appropriately. It is possible that the net proceeds will be invested in a way that does not yield a favorable, or any, return for us. The failure of our management to use such funds effectively could have a material adverse effect on our business, financial condition, operating results and cash flow.

[Table of Contents](#)

Risks Related to our Business and Capital Requirements:

Since we have a limited operating history in our business, it is difficult for potential investors to evaluate our business.

Our short operating history may hinder our ability to successfully meet our objectives and makes it difficult for potential investors to evaluate our business or prospective operations. We have not generated any revenues since inception and we are not currently profitable and may never become profitable. As an early stage company, we are subject to all the risks inherent in the financing, expenditures, operations, complications and delays inherent in a new business. Accordingly, our business and success faces risks from uncertainties faced by developing companies in a competitive environment. There can be no assurance that our efforts will be successful or that we will ultimately be able to attain profitability.

We currently have no product revenues and no products approved for marketing and need substantial additional funding to continue our operations. We may not be able to raise capital when needed, if at all, which would force us to delay, reduce or eliminate our product development programs or commercialization efforts and could cause our business to fail.

We expect to need substantial additional funding to pursue the clinical development of our product candidates and launch and commercialize any product candidates for which we receive regulatory approval.

We expect that our existing cash will be sufficient to fund our capital requirements for at least the next month. We require additional capital for the development and commercialization of our product candidates. Furthermore, we expect to incur additional costs associated with operating as a public company. We may also encounter unforeseen expenses, difficulties, complications, delays and other unknown factors that may increase our capital needs and/or cause us to spend our cash resources faster than we expect. Accordingly, we will need to obtain substantial additional funding in order to continue our operations. As noted in our audited financial statements for the years ended December 31, 2018 and 2017, the uncertainties surrounding our ability to fund our operations raise substantial doubt about our ability to continue as a going concern.

To date, we have financed our operations entirely through investments by founders and other investors. We may seek additional funds through public or private equity or debt financing, via strategic transactions or collaborative arrangements. Additional funding from those or other sources may not be available when or in the amounts needed, on acceptable terms, or at all. If we raise capital through the sale of equity, or securities convertible into equity, it would result in dilution to our then existing stockholders, which could be significant depending on the price at which we may be able to sell our securities. If we raise additional capital through the incurrence of indebtedness, we would likely become subject to covenants restricting our business activities, and holders of debt instruments may have rights and privileges senior to those of our equity investors. In addition, servicing the interest and principal repayment obligations under debt facilities could divert funds that would otherwise be available to support research and development, clinical or commercialization activities. If we obtain capital through collaborative arrangements, these arrangements could require us to relinquish rights to our technology or product candidates and could result in our receipt of only a portion of the revenues associated with the partnered product.

There are no assurances that future funding will be available on favorable terms or at all. If additional funding is not obtained, we may need to reduce, defer or cancel preclinical and lab work, planned clinical trials, or overhead expenditures to the extent necessary. The failure to fund our operating and capital requirements could have a material adverse effect on our business, financial condition and results of operations.

If we are unable to raise capital when needed or on attractive terms, we could be forced to delay, reduce or eliminate our research and development programs or any future commercialization efforts. Any of these events could significantly harm our business, financial condition and prospects.

[Table of Contents](#)

Our independent registered public accounting firm has expressed substantial doubt about our ability to continue as a going concern.

Our historical financial statements have been prepared under the assumption that we will continue as a going concern. Our independent registered public accounting firm has issued a report on our audited financial statements for the year ended December 31, 2018 that included an explanatory paragraph referring to our recurring operating losses and expressing substantial doubt in our ability to continue as a going concern. Our ability to continue as a going concern is dependent upon our ability to obtain additional equity financing or other capital, attain further operating efficiencies, reduce expenditures, and, ultimately, generate revenue. Our financial statements do not include any adjustments that might result from the outcome of this uncertainty. However, if adequate funds are not available to us when we need it, we will be required to curtail our operations which would, in turn, further raise substantial doubt about our ability to continue as a going concern. The doubt regarding our potential ability to continue as a going concern may adversely affect our ability to obtain new financing on reasonable terms or at all. Additionally, if we are unable to continue as a going concern, our stockholders may lose some or all of their investment in the Company.

We rely heavily on UM for our research and development programs, and UM is joint owner of the intellectual property resulting from its preclinical research and development.

We rely heavily on our relationship with UM for our research and development programs. Under the terms of our agreements with UM, we are required to fund preclinical and clinical trials required for cannabinoid-based products developed by UM. If UM were to terminate one or more of our agreements, we may be required to return or destroy certain materials or data developed during our partnership that is confidential to UM and face substantial delays or possible termination of the affected program.

In addition, the agreements provide that all intellectual property rights (including any patents and non-manufacturing related know-how) that are conceived by both UM and us during the course of the collaboration are to be jointly owned by UM and us. Because UM exercises some control over this jointly owned intellectual property, we may need to seek UM's consent to pursue, use, license and/or enforce some of these intellectual property rights in the future. An unexpected deterioration in our relationship with UM may have a material adverse effect on our business, reputation, results of operations and financial condition.

We are heavily dependent on the success of our early-stage product candidates, which will require significant additional efforts to develop and may prove not to be viable for commercialization.

We are very early in our development efforts. We have no products approved for sale and all of our product candidates are in preclinical development including development of cannabinoid-based formulations. Further preclinical testing is ongoing and if successful, will be part of a regulatory filing to satisfy Investigational New Drug ("IND") requirements which need to be met in order for the candidate compounds and routes of administration to enter testing in humans. Our ability to generate product revenue, which we do not expect will occur for many years, if ever, will depend heavily on the successful development and commercialization of our product candidates. Our business depends entirely on the successful development, clinical testing and commercialization of these and any other product candidates we may seek to develop in the future, which may never occur.

The success of our product candidates will depend on several factors, any one of which we may not be able to successfully complete, such as:

- receipt of necessary controlled substance registrations from the DEA;
- successful completion of preclinical studies and clinical trials;
- receipt of marketing approvals from the Food and Drug Administration (the "FDA") and other applicable regulatory authorities;
- obtaining, maintaining and protecting our intellectual property portfolio, including patents and trade secrets, and regulatory exclusivity for our product candidates;

Table of Contents

- identifying, making arrangements and ensuring necessary registrations with third-party manufacturers, or establishing commercial manufacturing capabilities for applicable product candidates;
- launching commercial sales of the products, if and when approved, whether alone or in collaboration with others;
- acceptance of our products, if and when approved, by patients, the medical community and third-party payors;
- effectively competing with other therapies;
- obtaining and maintaining healthcare coverage and adequate reimbursement of our products; and
- maintaining a continued acceptable safety profile of our products following approval.

If we do not achieve one or more of these factors in a timely manner or at all, we could experience significant delays or an inability to successfully commercialize our product candidates, which would materially harm our business.

We may not be successful in our efforts to build a pipeline of product candidates.

Our strategy is to use and expand our relationship with UM to build a pipeline of cannabinoid-based products. We may not be able to develop product candidates that are safe and effective for all or any of our targets. Even if we are successful in building a product pipeline, the potential product candidates that we identify may not be suitable for clinical development for a number of reasons, including due to harmful side effects or other characteristics that indicate a low likelihood of receiving marketing approval or achieving market acceptance. If our methods of identifying potential product candidates fail to produce a pipeline of potentially viable product candidates, then we may not be able to obtain product revenue in future periods, which would make it unlikely that we would ever achieve profitability.

We expect to face intense competition, often from companies with greater resources and experience than we have.

The pharmaceutical industry is highly competitive and subject to rapid change. The industry continues to expand and evolve as an increasing number of competitors and potential competitors enter the market. Many of these competitors and potential competitors have substantially greater financial, technological, managerial and research and development resources and experience than we have. Some of these competitors and potential competitors have more experience than we have in the development of pharmaceutical products, including validation procedures and regulatory matters. In addition, our pipeline products, if successfully developed, will compete with product offerings from large and well-established companies that have greater marketing and sales experience and capabilities than we or our collaboration partners have. If we are unable to compete successfully, we may be unable to grow and sustain our revenue.

We have substantial capital requirements that, if not met, may hinder our operations.

We anticipate that we will make substantial capital expenditures for laboratory and preclinical work and for future clinical trials. If we cannot raise sufficient capital, we may have limited ability to expend the capital necessary to undertake or complete laboratory and preclinical work and future clinical trials. There can be no assurance that debt or equity financing will be available or sufficient to meet these requirements or for other corporate purposes, or if debt or equity financing is available, that it will be on terms acceptable to us. Moreover, future activities may require us to alter our capitalization significantly. Our inability to access sufficient capital for our operations could have a material adverse effect on our financial condition, results of operations or prospects.

[Table of Contents](#)

Additional capital may be costly or difficult to obtain.

Additional capital, whether through the offering of equity or debt securities, may not be available on reasonable terms or at all, especially in light of the recent downturn in the economy and dislocations in the credit and capital markets. If we are unable to obtain required additional capital, we may have to curtail our growth plans or cut back on existing business and, further, we may not be able to continue operating if we do not generate sufficient revenues from operations needed to stay in business. We may incur substantial costs in pursuing future capital financing, including investment banking fees, legal fees, accounting fees, securities law compliance fees, printing and distribution expenses and other costs. We may also be required to recognize non-cash expenses in connection with certain securities we issue, such as convertible notes and warrants, which may adversely impact our financial condition.

Current global financial conditions have been characterized by increased volatility which could negatively impact our business, prospects, liquidity and financial condition.

Current global financial conditions and recent market events have been characterized by increased volatility and the resulting tightening of the credit and capital markets has reduced the amount of available liquidity and overall economic activity. We cannot guaranty that debt or equity financing, the ability to borrow funds or cash generated by operations will be available or sufficient to meet or satisfy our initiatives, objectives or requirements. Our inability to access sufficient amounts of capital on terms acceptable to us for our operations will negatively impact our business, prospects, liquidity and financial condition.

If we are not able to attract and retain highly qualified personnel, we may not be able to successfully implement our business strategy.

Our ability to compete in the highly competitive biotechnology and pharmaceuticals industries depends upon our ability to attract and retain highly qualified managerial, scientific and medical personnel. Our success depends in large measure on our key personnel, including Dr. Brian Murphy, our Chief Executive Officer. The loss of the services of Dr. Murphy could significantly hinder our operations. We do not currently have key person insurance in effect for Dr. Murphy. In addition, the competition for qualified personnel in the pharmaceutical industry is intense and there can be no assurance that we will be able to continue to attract and retain all personnel necessary for the development and operation of our business.

We may be subject to claims by third parties asserting that our employees or we have misappropriated their intellectual property or claiming ownership of what we regard as our own intellectual property.

Some of our employees were previously employed at other biotechnology or pharmaceutical companies, including our competitors or potential competitors. Although we try to ensure that our employees do not use the proprietary information or know-how of others in their work for us, with contractual provisions and other procedures, we may be subject to claims that these employees or we have used or disclosed intellectual property, including trade secrets or other proprietary information, of any such employee's former employers. Litigation may be necessary to defend against any such claims.

In addition, while it is our policy to require our employees and contractors who may be involved in the development of intellectual property to execute agreements assigning such intellectual property to us, we may be unsuccessful in executing such an agreement with each party who in fact contributes to the development of intellectual property that we regard as our own. Further, the terms of such assignment agreements may be breached and we may not be able to successfully enforce their terms, which may force us to bring claims against third parties, or defend claims they may bring against us, to determine the ownership of intellectual property rights we may regard and treat as our own.

We will need to grow the size of our organization, and we may experience difficulties in managing any growth we may achieve.

As of the date of this prospectus, we have four full-time employees. As our development and commercialization plans and strategies develop, we expect to need additional research, development, managerial, operational, sales, marketing, financial, accounting, legal and other resources. Future growth would impose significant added responsibilities on members of management. Our management may not be able to accommodate those added responsibilities, and our failure to do so could prevent us from effectively managing future growth, if any, and successfully growing our company.

[Table of Contents](#)

If we breach any of the agreements under which we license from UM the commercialization rights to our product candidates, we could lose license rights that are important to our business and our operations could be materially harmed.

We license from UM the use, development and commercialization rights for our product candidates. As a result, our current business plans are dependent upon our maintenance of the license agreements and the rights we license under it. If we fail to comply with any of the conditions or obligations or otherwise breach the terms of our license agreement with UM, or any future license agreement we may enter on which our business or product candidates are dependent, UM may have the right to terminate the applicable agreement in whole or in part and thereby extinguish our rights to the licensed technology and intellectual property and/or any rights we have acquired to develop and commercialize certain product candidates. The loss of the rights licensed to us under our license agreement with UM, or any future license agreement that we may enter granting rights on which our business or product candidates are dependent, would eliminate our ability to further develop the applicable product candidates and would materially harm our business, prospects, financial condition and results of operations.

Our operating activities may be restricted as a result of covenants related to the outstanding indebtedness under our Credit Agreement and we may be required to repay the outstanding indebtedness in an event of default, which could have a material adverse effect on our business.

We could default on the payment of our indebtedness under our Multi-Draw Credit Agreement entered into with Emerald Health Sciences, Inc. (“Emerald Health Sciences”), a related party, on October 5, 2018 (the “Credit Agreement”), when it comes due which may result in acceleration of all amounts outstanding under our Credit Agreement. Additionally, our Credit Agreement restricts, among other things, our ability to incur debt and requires us to comply with certain covenants. We may not be able to comply with these restrictions and covenants in the future. Our failure to comply with any of the restrictions and covenants under our Credit Agreement could result in an event of default under our Credit Agreement and result in the acceleration of the maturity of the indebtedness under the Credit Agreement. We may not have enough available cash or be able to raise additional funds through equity or debt financings to repay such indebtedness at the time any such event of default occurs. In that case, we may be required to delay, limit, reduce or terminate our product candidate development or commercialization efforts or grant to others rights to develop and market product candidates that we would otherwise prefer to develop and market ourselves.

As our products and company are in a highly regulated industry, significant and unforeseen changes in policy may have material impacts on our business.

A primary reason for our company to develop the cannabis-derived pharmaceuticals is the changing regulatory and social landscape, in terms of cannabis. State efforts to decriminalize and/or legalize, as well as the growth of state level medical marijuana rulings, have created the opportunity to develop the medical potential for cannabis. However, cannabis is still illegal on a Federal level, outside of the areas described above. We do not know what impact might occur to our development plans, if the Federal law were to change dramatically in the near-term. While we believe the licensed intellectual property, the institutional knowledge, and our management experience will provide us with what is necessary to achieve our goals, we cannot predict the impact of any changes in the current regulatory environment

The use of “medical marijuana” or “recreational marijuana” in the United States may impact our business.

There is a substantial amount of change occurring in various states of the United States regarding the use of “medical marijuana.” While cannabis is a Schedule I substance as defined under federal law, and its possession and use is not permitted in accordance with federal law, a number of individual states have enacted state laws to authorize possession and use of cannabis for medical purposes, and in some states for recreational purposes. While our product candidates are distinct from crude herbal cannabis, our prospects may nevertheless be impacted by these laws at the state level in the United States.

[Table of Contents](#)

As with all medicines, it is very difficult to gauge accurately market acceptance of our potential drug candidates. While we are taking and will take significant efforts in selecting drug candidates that we believe represent the best opportunities for market adoption, such as unsatisfied needs, competitive environment, partnering potential, therapeutic potential, and target product profile potential, the ultimate market acceptance of a preclinical candidate is very difficult to predict. The ultimate acceptance will be impacted by the performance in clinical trials (efficacy and safety), reimbursement and development of competitive compounds. Also, the healthcare reimbursement environment has been changing over the recent past and is likely to continue to evolve. If we are unable to gain market acceptance for our product candidates, if approved, then we may not be able to generate substantial product revenues.

We currently have no marketing and sales experience or capabilities to market and sell our product candidates, if approved.

We currently do not have experience in the marketing, sales and distribution of any of our product candidates that are able to attain regulatory approval. If our product candidates receive regulatory approval, we will need to establish sales and marketing capabilities to commercialize our product candidates, which will be expensive and time consuming. Any failure or delay in the development of our internal sales and marketing capabilities would adversely impact the commercialization of any of our products that we obtain approval to market. If we are not successful in commercializing our product candidates, either on our own or through collaborations with one or more third parties, our future product revenue will suffer and we may incur significant additional losses.

Our commercial success depends upon attaining significant market acceptance of our product candidates, if approved, among physicians and patients.

Even if approved by the FDA, our product candidates may not gain market acceptance among physicians and patients, which is vital to our commercial success. Market acceptance of any product candidate for which we receive approval depends on a number of factors, including:

- the clinical indications for which the drug is approved and efficacy and safety as demonstrated in clinical trials;
- the timing of market introduction of the product candidate and/or competitive products;
- acceptance of the drug as a safe and effective treatment by physicians and patients;
- the potential and perceived advantages of the product candidate over alternative treatments;
- the cost of treatment in relation to alternative treatments; and
- the prevalence and severity of adverse side effects.

If our product candidates are approved but fail to achieve an adequate level of acceptance by physicians and patients, we will not be able to generate significant revenues, and we may not become or remain profitable.

We may expend our limited resources to pursue a particular product candidate or indication and may fail to capitalize on product candidates or indications that may be more profitable or for which there is a greater likelihood of success.

Because we have limited financial and managerial resources, we must focus our efforts on particular research programs and product candidates for specific indications. As a result, we may forego or delay pursuit of opportunities with other product candidates or for other indications that later prove to have greater commercial potential. Our resource allocation decisions may cause us to fail to capitalize on viable commercial products or profitable market opportunities. If we do not accurately evaluate the commercial potential or target market for a particular product candidate, we may relinquish valuable rights to that product candidate through collaboration, licensing or other royalty arrangements in cases in which it would have been more advantageous for

us to retain sole development and commercialization rights to such product candidate. Any such failure to improperly assess potential product candidates could result in missed opportunities and/or our focus on product candidates with low market potential, which would harm our business and financial condition.

[Table of Contents](#)

We engage in transactions with related parties and such transactions present possible conflicts of interest that could have an adverse effect on us.

We have entered, and may continue to enter, into transactions with Emerald Health Sciences and its affiliates and other related parties for financing.

corporate, business development and operational services. Such transactions may not have been entered into on an arm's-length basis, and we may have achieved more or less favorable terms because such transactions were entered into with our related parties. We rely, and will continue to rely, on our related parties to maintain these services. If the pricing for these services changes, or if our related parties cease to provide these services, including by terminating agreements with us, we may be unable to obtain replacements for these services on the same terms without disruption to our business. This could have a material effect on our business, results of operations and financial condition. The details of certain of these transactions are set forth in "Certain Relationships and Related Party Transactions." Related party transactions create the possibility of conflicts of interest with regard to our management, including that:

- we may enter into contracts between us, on the one hand, and related parties, on the other, that are not the result of arm's-length transactions;
- our executive officers and directors that hold positions of responsibility with related parties may be aware of certain business opportunities that are appropriate for presentation to us as well as to such other related parties and may present such business opportunities to such other parties; and
- our executive officers and directors that hold positions of responsibility with related parties may have significant duties with, and spend significant time serving, other entities and may have conflicts of interest in allocating time.

Such conflicts could cause an individual in our management to seek to advance his or her economic interests or the economic interests of certain related parties above ours. Further, the appearance of conflicts of interest created by related party transactions could impair the confidence of our investors. Our audit committee reviews these transactions. Notwithstanding this, it is possible that a conflict of interest could have a material adverse effect on our liquidity, results of operations and financial condition.

Risks Related to Controlled Substances

The product candidates we are developing will be subject to U.S. controlled substance laws and regulations and failure to comply with these laws and regulations, or the cost of compliance with these laws and regulations, may adversely affect the results of our business operations, both during non-clinical and clinical development and post-approval, and our financial condition.

The product candidates we plan to develop will contain controlled substances as defined in the CSA. Controlled substances that are pharmaceutical products are subject to a high degree of regulation under the CSA, which establishes, among other things, certain registration, manufacturing quotas, security, recordkeeping, reporting, import, export and other requirements administered by the DEA. The DEA classifies controlled substances into five schedules: Schedule I, II, III, IV or V substances. Schedule I substances by definition have a high potential for abuse, no currently "accepted medical use" in the United States, lack accepted safety for use under medical supervision, and may not be prescribed, marketed or sold in the United States. Pharmaceutical products approved for use in the United States may be listed as Schedule II, III, IV or V, with Schedule II substances considered to present the highest potential for abuse or dependence and Schedule V substances the lowest relative risk among such substances. Schedule I and II drugs are subject to the strictest controls under the CSA, including manufacturing and procurement quotas, security requirements and criteria for importation. In addition, dispensing of Schedule II drugs is further restricted. For example, they may not be refilled without a new prescription.

While cannabis, cannabis extracts, and some cannabinoids are Schedule I controlled substances, products approved for medical use in the United States that contain cannabis, cannabis extracts or some cannabinoids must be placed on Schedules II-V, since approval by the FDA satisfies the "accepted medical use" requirement.

[Table of Contents](#)

If approved by the FDA, we expect the finished dosage forms of our cannabinoid-derived drug product candidates to be listed by the DEA as a Schedule II or III controlled substance. Consequently, their manufacture, importation, exportation, domestic distribution, storage, sale and legitimate use will be subject to a significant degree of regulation. If approved by the FDA, we expect the final dosage forms of our cannabinoid-derived drug product candidates to be listed by the DEA as a Schedule II or III controlled substance. Consequently, their manufacture, importation, exportation, domestic distribution, storage, sale and legitimate use will be subject to a significant degree of regulation by the DEA. In addition, the scheduling process may take one or more years, thereby delaying the launch of the drug product in the United States. Furthermore, if the FDA, DEA, or any foreign regulatory authority determines that any of our drug product candidates may have potential for abuse, it may require us to generate more clinical or other data than we currently anticipate to establish whether or to what extent the substance has an abuse potential, which could increase the cost and/or delay the launch of the drug product.

Facilities conducting research, manufacturing, distributing, importing or exporting, or dispensing controlled substances must be registered (licensed) to perform these activities and have the security, control, recordkeeping, reporting and inventory mechanisms required by the DEA to prevent drug loss and diversion. All these facilities must renew their registrations annually, except dispensing facilities, which must renew every three years. The DEA conducts periodic inspections of certain registered establishments that handle controlled substances. Obtaining the necessary registrations may result in delay of the manufacturing, development, or distribution of our product candidates. Furthermore, failure to maintain compliance with the CSA, particularly non-compliance resulting in loss or diversion, can result in regulatory action that could have a material adverse effect on our business, financial condition and results of operations. The DEA may seek civil penalties, refuse to renew necessary registrations, or initiate proceedings to restrict, suspend or revoke those registrations. In certain circumstances, violations could lead to criminal proceedings. Individual states have also established controlled substance laws and regulations. Though state-controlled substances laws often mirror federal law, because the states are separate jurisdictions, they may separately schedule our product candidates. While some states automatically schedule a drug based on federal action, other states schedule drugs through rulemaking or a legislative action. State scheduling may delay commercial sale of any product for which we obtain federal regulatory approval and adverse scheduling could have a material adverse effect on the commercial attractiveness of such product. We or our partners or clinical sites must also obtain separate state registrations, permits or licenses in order to be able to obtain, handle, and distribute controlled substances for clinical trials or commercial sale, and failure to meet applicable regulatory requirements could lead to enforcement and sanctions by the states in addition to those from the DEA or otherwise arising under federal law.

To conduct clinical trials with our product candidates in the United States prior to approval, each of our research sites must obtain and maintain a DEA researcher registration that will allow those sites to handle and dispense the product candidate and to obtain the product. If the DEA delays or denies the grant of a research registration to one or more research sites, the clinical trial could be significantly delayed, and we could lose clinical trial sites.

Manufacturing of our product candidates is, and, if approved, our commercial products will be, subject to the DEA's annual manufacturing and procurement quota requirements, if classified as Schedule II. The annual quota allocated to us or our contract manufacturers for the controlled substances in our product candidates may not be sufficient to meet commercial demand or complete clinical trials. Consequently, any delay or refusal by the DEA in establishing our, or our contract manufacturers', procurement and/or production quota for controlled substances could delay or stop our clinical trials or product launches, which could have a material adverse effect on our business, financial position and operations.

If, upon approval of any of our product candidates, the product is scheduled as Schedule II or III, we would also need to identify wholesale distributors with the appropriate DEA registrations and authority to distribute the product to pharmacies and other health care providers. The failure to obtain, or delay in obtaining, or the loss any of those registrations could result in increased costs to us. Furthermore, state and federal enforcement actions, regulatory requirements, and legislation intended to reduce prescription drug abuse, such as the requirement that physicians consult a state prescription drug monitoring program may make physicians less willing to prescribe, and pharmacies to dispense, our products, if approved.

Our ability to research, develop and commercialize our drug product candidates is dependent on our ability to obtain and maintain the necessary controlled substance registrations from the DEA.

In the United States, the DEA regulates activities relating to the cultivation, possession and supply of cannabis for medical research and/or commercial development, including the requirement to obtain annual registrations to manufacture or distribute pharmaceutical products derived from cannabis extracts. The NIDA also plays a role in oversight of the cultivation of cannabis for medicinal research. We do not currently handle any controlled substances, but we plan to partner with third-parties to engage in the research and development of cannabis-derived compounds for medical purposes. This will require that our third-party contractors obtain and maintain the necessary DEA registrations, and be subject to other regulatory requirements. The Company plans to develop and manufacture synthetically produced active drug product and in February 2016, July 2018 and April 2019, signed agreements with Albany Molecular Research Inc (“AMRI”) to synthetically manufacture our API to be used in our development programs for glaucoma and CINV. In August 2019, the Company terminated its ongoing agreements with AMRI. The Company entered into an agreement with Noramco, Inc. (“Noramco”) in February 2019 to develop scale-up synthesis methods and to manufacture the analog derivative, CBD-valine-hemisuccinate (“CBDVHS”) and amended the agreement in August 2019 to include tetrahydrocannabinol-valine-hemisuccinate (“THCVHS”).

The cultivation of cannabis is strictly regulated in the United States under a complex legal framework and our partners may be unable to obtain or maintain the necessary authorizations to cultivate cannabis for the research and development of cannabis-derived compounds.

We are partnering with UM to research and develop cannabis-derived drug products. Pursuant to that partnership, UM plans to cultivate cannabis and make extracts to conduct or enable our third-party laboratories to conduct early investigations into proof-of-concept studies on the activity of these cannabinoids in various medical conditions. The regulation of cannabis is complex and subject to stringent controls. UM has indicated that its plan for cultivating cannabis for the purification of cannabis extracts is in compliance with applicable law, including the CSA, DEA regulations, and the United States’ obligations under the 1961 Single Convention on Narcotic Drugs. However, there is a risk that regulatory authorities may disagree or may decline to authorize UM to engage in the contemplated activities under the partnership. Interpretations of law that DEA adopted in the past may evolve or change. If UM cannot obtain or maintain the necessary regulatory authorizations that we anticipate will be required for the contemplated development program, our business may suffer and we may not be able to pursue the discovery, research and development of cannabinoids.

Risks Related to Government Regulation

If we fail to demonstrate the safety and efficacy of any product candidate that we develop to the satisfaction of the FDA or comparable foreign regulatory authorities we may incur additional costs or experience delays in completing, or ultimately be unable to complete, the development and commercialization of such product candidate. This would adversely impact our ability to generate revenue, our business and our results of operations.

We are not permitted to commercialize, market, promote, or sell any product candidate in the United States without obtaining marketing approval from the FDA or in other countries without obtaining approvals from comparable foreign regulatory authorities, such as the European Medicines Agency (the “EMA”), and we may never receive such approvals. To gain approval to market a drug product, we must complete extensive preclinical development and clinical trials that demonstrate the safety and efficacy of the product for the intended indication to the satisfaction of the FDA or other regulatory authority.

We have not previously submitted a new drug application (“NDA”) to the FDA, or similar drug approval filings to comparable foreign authorities, for any product candidate, and we cannot be certain that any of our product candidates will be successful in clinical trials or receive regulatory approval. Further, our product candidates may not receive regulatory approval even if they are successful in clinical trials. If we do not receive regulatory approval for our product candidates, we may not be able to continue our operations. Even if we successfully obtain regulatory approval to market our product candidates, our revenue will be dependent, in part, upon the size of the markets in the territories for which we gain regulatory approval and have commercial rights.

[Table of Contents](#)

The FDA or any foreign regulatory bodies could delay, limit or deny approval of our product candidates for many reasons, including:

- our inability to demonstrate to the satisfaction of the FDA or the applicable foreign regulatory body that the product candidate is safe and effective for the requested indication;
- the FDA's or the applicable foreign regulatory agency's disagreement with the interpretation of data from preclinical studies or clinical trials;
- our inability to demonstrate that the clinical and other benefits of the product candidate outweigh any safety or other perceived risks;
- the FDA's or the applicable foreign regulatory agency's requirement for additional preclinical or clinical studies;
- the FDA's or the applicable foreign regulatory agency's non-approval of the formulation, labeling or the specifications of the product candidate;
- the FDA's or the applicable foreign regulatory agency's failure to approve the manufacturing processes or facilities of third-party manufacturers with which we contract; or
- the potential for approval policies or regulations of the FDA or the applicable foreign regulatory agencies to significantly change in a manner rendering our clinical data insufficient for approval.

Even if we eventually complete clinical testing and receive approval of a NDA or foreign regulatory filing for a product candidate, the FDA or the applicable foreign regulatory agency may grant approval contingent on the performance of costly additional clinical trials which may be required after approval. The FDA or the applicable foreign regulatory agency also may approve the product candidate for a more limited indication or a narrower patient population than we originally requested, and the FDA, or applicable foreign regulatory agency, may not approve the labeling that we believe is necessary or desirable for the successful commercialization of the product. Any delay in obtaining, or inability to obtain, applicable regulatory approval would delay or prevent commercialization of the product candidate and would materially adversely impact our business and prospects.

Preclinical and clinical drug development involves a lengthy and expensive process with an uncertain outcome. We may incur additional costs or experience delays in completing, or ultimately be unable to complete, the development and commercialization of our product candidates.

Clinical testing is expensive and can take several years to complete, and its outcome is inherently uncertain. Moreover, obtaining sufficient quantities of product for clinical testing is subject to regulation by DEA and, in some cases, NIDA. It is impossible to predict when or if any of our product candidates will prove effective or safe in humans or will receive regulatory approval. Before obtaining marketing approval from regulatory authorities for the sale of any product candidate, we must complete preclinical studies and then conduct extensive clinical trials to demonstrate the safety and efficacy of our product candidates in humans. A failure of one or more clinical trials can occur at any stage of testing. The outcome of preclinical testing and early clinical trials may not be predictive of the success of later clinical trials, and interim results of a clinical trial do not necessarily predict final results. Moreover, preclinical and clinical data are often susceptible to varying interpretations and analyses, and many companies that have believed their product candidates performed satisfactorily in preclinical studies and clinical trials have nonetheless failed to obtain marketing approval of their products. We may experience numerous unforeseen events during, or as a result of, clinical trials that could delay or prevent our ability to receive marketing approval or subsequently to commercialize our product candidates, including:

- FDA, DEA or NIDA may not authorize the use and distribution of sufficient quantities of product for clinical testing;

· regulators or independent institutional review boards (IRBs) may not authorize us or our investigators to commence a clinical trial or conduct a clinical trial at a prospective trial site;

- we may experience delays in reaching, or fail to reach, agreement on acceptable clinical trial contracts or clinical trial protocols with prospective trial sites;
- clinical trials of our product candidates may produce negative or inconclusive results, and we may decide, or regulators may require us, to conduct additional clinical trials or abandon product development programs;
- the number of patients required for clinical trials of our product candidates may be larger than we anticipate, enrollment in these clinical trials may be slower than we anticipate or participants may drop out of these clinical trials at a higher rate than we anticipate;
- our third-party contractors may fail to comply with regulatory requirements or meet their contractual obligations to us in a timely manner, or at all;
- we may have to suspend or terminate clinical trials of our product candidates for various reasons, including a finding that the participants are being exposed to unacceptable health risks;
- regulators or institutional review boards may require that we or our investigators suspend or terminate clinical research for various reasons, including noncompliance with regulatory requirements or a finding that the participants are being exposed to unacceptable health risks;
- the cost of clinical trials of our product candidates may be greater than we anticipate;
- the supply or quality of our product candidates or other materials necessary to conduct clinical trials of our product candidates may be insufficient or inadequate; and
- our product candidates may have undesirable side effects or other unexpected characteristics, causing us or our investigators, regulators or institutional review boards to suspend or terminate the trials.

If we are required to conduct additional clinical trials or other testing of our product candidates beyond those that we currently contemplate, if we are unable to successfully complete clinical trials of our product candidates or other testing, if the results of these trials or tests are not positive or are only modestly positive or if there are safety concerns, we may:

- be delayed in obtaining marketing approval for our product candidates;
- not obtain marketing approval at all;
- obtain approval for indications or patient populations that are not as broad as intended or desired;
- obtain approval with labeling that includes significant use or distribution restrictions or safety warnings;
- be subject to additional post-marketing testing requirements; or
- have the product removed from the market after obtaining marketing approval.

Our product development costs will also increase if we experience delays in testing or in receiving marketing approvals. We do not know whether any of our preclinical studies or clinical trials will begin as planned, will need to be restructured or will be completed on schedule, or at all. Significant preclinical study or clinical trial delays also could allow our competitors to bring products to market before we do and impair our ability to successfully commercialize our product candidates and may harm our business and results of operations.

[Table of Contents](#)

If we experience delays or difficulties in the enrollment of patients in clinical trials, our receipt of necessary regulatory approvals could be delayed or prevented.

We may not be able to initiate or continue clinical trials for our product candidates if we are unable to locate and enroll a sufficient number of eligible patients to participate in these trials as required by the FDA or similar regulatory authorities outside the United States. Our pool of suitable patients may be smaller for some of our product candidates, which will impact our ability to enroll a sufficient number of suitable patients. In addition, some of our competitors have ongoing clinical trials for product candidates that treat the same indications as our product candidates, and patients who would otherwise be eligible for our clinical trials may instead enroll in clinical trials of our competitors' product candidates. Patient enrollment is affected by other factors including:

- the severity of the disease under investigation;
- the eligibility criteria for the study in question;
- the perceived risks and benefits of the product candidate under study;
- the efforts to facilitate timely enrollment in clinical trials;
- the patient referral practices of physicians;
- the ability to monitor patients adequately during and after treatment; and
- the proximity and availability of clinical trial sites for prospective patients.

Our inability to enroll a sufficient number of patients for our clinical trials would result in significant delays and could require us to abandon one or more clinical trials altogether. Enrollment delays in our clinical trials may result in increased development costs for our product candidates, which would cause the value of our company to decline and limit our ability to obtain additional financing.

Our development and commercialization strategy for THCVHS, including NB1111, may depend, in part, on published scientific literature and the FDA's prior findings regarding the safety and efficacy of dronabinol, based on data not developed by us, but upon which the FDA may rely in reviewing our NDA.

The Hatch-Waxman Act added Section 505(b)(2) to the Federal Food, Drug and Cosmetic Act ("FDCA"). Section 505(b)(2) permits the filing of a NDA where at least some of the information required for approval comes from investigations that were not conducted by or for the applicant and for which the applicant has not obtained a right of reference or use from the person by or for whom the investigations were conducted. The FDA interprets Section 505(b)(2) of the FDCA, for purposes of approving a NDA, to permit the applicant to rely, in part, upon published literature or the FDA's previous findings of safety and efficacy for an approved product. The FDA may also require companies to perform additional clinical trials or measurements to support any deviation from the previously approved product. The FDA may then approve the new product candidate for all or some of the label indications for which the referenced product has been approved, as well as for any new indication sought by the Section 505(b)(2) applicant. The label, however, may require all or some of the limitations, contraindications, warnings or precautions included in the listed product's label, including a black box warning, or may require additional limitations, contraindications, warnings or precautions. Depending on guidance from the FDA, we may decide to submit a NDA for NB1111 under Section 505(b)(2) relying, in part, on the FDA's previous findings of safety and efficacy from investigations for the approved drug product Dronabinol for which we have not received a right of reference and published scientific literature. Even though we may be able to take advantage of Section 505(b)(2) to support potential U.S. approval, the FDA may require us to perform additional clinical trials or measurements to support approval. In addition, notwithstanding the approval of many products by the FDA pursuant to Section 505(b)(2), over the last few years some pharmaceutical companies and others have objected to the FDA's interpretation of Section 505(b)(2). If the FDA changes its interpretation of Section 505(b)(2), or if the

FDA's interpretation is successfully challenged in court, this could delay or even prevent the FDA from approving any Section 505(b)(2) NDAs that we submit. Such a result could require us to conduct additional testing and costly clinical trials, which could substantially delay or prevent the approval and launch of our product candidates, including NB1111.

[Table of Contents](#)

Even if we receive regulatory approval for a product candidate, we will be subject to ongoing regulatory obligations and continued regulatory review, which may result in significant additional expense and subject us to restrictions, withdrawal from the market, or penalties if we fail to comply with applicable regulatory requirements or if we experience unanticipated problems with our product candidates, when and if approved.

Once regulatory approval has been granted, the approved product and its manufacturer are subject to continual review by the FDA, DEA and/or non-U.S. regulatory authorities. Any regulatory approval that we receive for our product candidates may be subject to limitations on the indicated uses for which the product may be marketed or contain requirements for potentially costly post-marketing follow-up studies or surveillance to monitor the safety and efficacy of the product. In addition, if the FDA and/or non-U.S. regulatory authorities approve any of our product candidates, we will be subject to extensive and ongoing regulatory requirements by the FDA and other regulatory authorities with regard to labeling, packaging, adverse event reporting, storage, distribution, advertising, promotion, recordkeeping and submission of safety and other post-market information. Manufacturers of our products and manufacturers' facilities are required to comply with current good manufacturing practice ("cGMP") regulations, which include requirements related to quality control and quality assurance as well as the corresponding maintenance of records and documentation. Further, regulatory authorities must approve these manufacturing facilities before they can be used to manufacture our products, and these facilities are subject to continual review and periodic inspections by the FDA and other regulatory authorities for compliance with cGMP regulations. Accordingly, we and others with whom we work must continue to expend time, money and effort in all areas of regulatory compliance, including manufacturing, production and quality control. We will also be required to report certain adverse reactions and production problems, if any, to the FDA and to comply with requirements concerning advertising and promotion for our products. If we, any future collaboration partner or a regulatory authority discovers previously unknown problems with a product, such as adverse events of unanticipated severity or frequency, or problems with the facility where the product is manufactured, a regulatory authority may impose restrictions on that product, the collaboration partner, the manufacturer or us, including requiring withdrawal of the product from the market or suspension of manufacturing.

Any DEA registrations that we receive may also be subject to limitations. For example, if approved, our commercial products will be subject to the DEA's annual manufacturing and procurement quota requirements. The annual quota allocated to us or our contract manufacturers for the controlled substances in our product candidates may not be sufficient to meet commercial demand. Our facilities that handle controlled substances, and those of our third-party contractors, will also be subject to registration requirements and periodic inspections. Additionally, if approved by the FDA, the finished dosage forms of our drug product candidates will be subject to the DEA's rescheduling process, which may delay product launch and impose additional regulatory burdens. Failure to maintain compliance with the CSA, particularly non-compliance resulting in loss or diversion, can result in regulatory action that could have a material adverse effect on our business, financial condition and results of operations. The DEA may seek civil penalties, refuse to renew necessary registrations, or initiate proceedings to restrict, suspend or revoke those registrations. In certain circumstances, violations could lead to criminal proceedings. For additional information, see Risk Factor, "*The product candidates we are developing will be subject to U.S. controlled substance laws and regulations and failure to comply with these laws and regulations, or the cost of compliance with these laws and regulations, may adversely affect the results of our business operations, both during non-clinical and clinical development and post-approval, and our financial condition.*"

The FDA closely regulates the post-approval marketing and promotion of drugs to ensure drugs are marketed only for the approved indications and in accordance with the provisions of the approved labeling and regulatory requirements. The FDA also imposes stringent restrictions on manufacturers' communications regarding off-label use and if we do not restrict the marketing of our products only to their approved indications, we may be subject to enforcement action for off-label marketing. If we, our product candidates or the manufacturing facilities for our product candidates fail to comply with regulatory requirements of the FDA and/or other non-U.S. regulatory authorities, we could be subject to administrative or judicially imposed sanctions, including:

- warning letters or untitled letters;
- mandated modifications to promotional materials or the required provision of corrective information to healthcare practitioners;
- restrictions imposed on the product or its manufacturers or manufacturing processes;
- restrictions imposed on the labeling or marketing of the product;
- restrictions imposed on product distribution or use;
- requirements for post-marketing clinical trials;

Table of Contents

- suspension of any ongoing clinical trials;
- suspension of or withdrawal of regulatory approval;
- voluntary or mandatory product recalls and publicity requirements;
- refusal to approve pending applications for marketing approval of new products or supplements to approved applications filed by us;
- restrictions on operations, including costly new manufacturing requirements;
- seizure or detention of our products;
- refusal to permit the import or export of our products;
- required entry into a consent decree, which can include imposition of various fines (including restitution or disgorgement of profits or revenue), reimbursements for inspection costs, required due dates for specific actions and penalties for noncompliance;
- civil or criminal penalties; or
- injunctions.

Widely publicized events concerning the safety risk of certain drug products have resulted in the withdrawal of drug products, revisions to drug labeling that further limit use of the drug products and the imposition by the FDA of risk evaluation and mitigation strategies (“REMS”), to ensure that the benefits of the drug outweigh its risks. In addition, widely publicized events concerning the safety risk of certain drug products have resulted in the withdrawal of drug products, revisions to drug labeling that further limit use of the drug products and the imposition by the FDA of REMS to ensure that the benefits of the drug outweigh its risks. In addition, because of the serious public health risks of high profile adverse safety events with certain products, the FDA may require, as a condition of approval, costly REMS programs.

The regulatory requirements and policies may change, and additional government regulations may be enacted for which we may also be required to comply. For example, in December 2016, the 21st Century Cures Act (“Cures Act”), was signed into law. The Cures Act, among other things, is intended to modernize the regulation of drugs and spur innovation, but its ultimate implementation is unclear. If we are slow or unable to adapt to changes in existing requirements or the adoption of new requirements or policies, or if we are not able to maintain regulatory compliance, we may lose any marketing approval that we may have obtained and we may not achieve or sustain profitability, which would adversely affect our business, prospects, financial condition and results of operations.

We cannot predict the likelihood, nature or extent of government regulation that may arise from future legislation or administrative action, either in the United States or in other countries. For example, certain regulatory policies of the Trump administration may impact our business and industry in ways that are difficult or impossible to predict. Since the November 2016 U.S. presidential election, the Trump administration has made numerous efforts to reduce regulation and its associated costs, including the issuance of a number of Executive Orders which could impose significant burdens on, or otherwise materially delay, the FDA’s ability to engage in routine regulatory and oversight activities such as implementing statutes through rulemaking, issuance of guidance, and review and approval of marketing applications. In January 2017, President Trump issued Executive Order 13771, applicable to all executive agencies, including the FDA, which requires an agency to repeal two existing rules for each new significant rule or guidance document to be issued, unless otherwise prohibited by law. This “two-for-one” policy is aimed at reducing regulatory costs. For fiscal years 2018 and beyond, this Executive Order requires agencies to identify regulations to offset any incremental cost of a new regulation and approximate the total costs or savings associated with each new regulation or repealed regulation. It is difficult to predict the extent to which such regulatory reform initiatives and actions will impact the FDA’s ability to exercise its regulatory authority. If these executive actions impose constraints on the FDA’s ability to engage in oversight and implementation activities in the normal course, our business may be negatively impacted. If we or any future collaboration partner are not able to maintain regulatory compliance, we or such collaboration partner, as applicable, will not be permitted to market our future products and our business will suffer.

Table of Contents

Serious adverse events or undesirable side effects or other unexpected properties of any of our product candidates may be identified during development or after approval that could delay, prevent or cause the withdrawal of regulatory approval, limit the commercial potential, or result in significant negative consequences following marketing approval.

Serious adverse events or undesirable side effects caused by, or other unexpected properties of, our product candidates could cause us, an IRB, or regulatory authorities to interrupt, delay or halt our clinical trials and could result in a more restrictive label, the imposition of distribution or use restrictions or the delay or denial of regulatory approval by the FDA or comparable foreign regulatory authorities. If any of our product candidates are associated with serious adverse events or undesirable side effects or have properties that are unexpected, we may need to abandon their development or limit development to certain uses or subpopulations in which the undesirable side effects or other characteristics are less prevalent, less severe or more acceptable from a risk-benefit perspective. Many compounds that initially showed promise in clinical or earlier stage testing have later been found to cause undesirable or unexpected side effects that prevented further development of the compound.

Undesirable side effects or other unexpected adverse events or properties of any of our other product candidates could arise or become known either during clinical development or, if approved, after the approved product has been marketed. If such an event occurs during development, our trials could be suspended or terminated and the FDA or comparable foreign regulatory authorities could order us to cease further development of, or deny approval of, our product candidates. If such an event occurs after such product candidates are approved, a number of potentially significant negative consequences may result, including:

- regulatory authorities may withdraw the approval of such product;
- regulatory authorities may require additional warnings on the label or impose distribution or use restrictions;
- regulatory authorities may require one or more post-market studies;
- we may be required to create a medication guide outlining the risks of such side effects for distribution to patients;
- we could be sued and held liable for harm caused to patients; and
- our reputation may suffer.

Any of these events could prevent us from achieving or maintaining market acceptance of the affected product candidate, if approved, or could substantially increase commercialization costs and expenses, which could delay or prevent us from generating revenue from the sale of our products and harm our business and results of operations.

We expect to rely on third parties, such as CROs, to conduct some or all of our preclinical and clinical trials. If these third parties do not successfully carry out their contractual duties or meet expected deadlines, we may be unable to obtain regulatory approval for or commercialize any of our product candidates.

We expect to rely on medical institutions, clinical investigators, contract laboratories and other third parties, such as CROs, to conduct our preclinical and clinical studies on our product candidates in compliance with applicable regulatory requirements. These third parties will not be our employees and, except for restrictions imposed by our contracts with such third parties, we will have limited ability to control the amount or timing of resources that they devote to our programs. Although we expect to rely on these third parties to conduct our preclinical studies and clinical trials, we will remain responsible for ensuring that each of our preclinical studies and clinical trials is conducted in accordance with its investigational plan and protocol and the applicable legal, regulatory, and scientific standards, and our reliance on these third parties will not relieve us of our regulatory responsibilities. These entities must maintain and comply with valid DEA registrations and requirements. The FDA and regulatory authorities in other jurisdictions require us to comply with regulations and standards, commonly referred to as current good clinical practices ("cGCPs"), for conducting, monitoring, recording and reporting the results of clinical trials, in order to ensure that the data and results are scientifically credible and accurate and that the trial subjects are adequately informed of the potential risks of participating in clinical trials. If we or any of our third-party contractors fail to comply with applicable cGCPs, the clinical data generated in our clinical trials may be deemed unreliable and the FDA or comparable foreign regulatory authorities may require us to perform additional clinical trials before approving our marketing applications. In addition, we are required to report certain financial interests of our third-party investigators if these relationships exceed certain financial thresholds and meet other criteria. The FDA or comparable foreign regulatory authorities may question the integrity of the data from those clinical trials conducted by principal investigators who previously served or currently serve as scientific advisors or consultants to us from time to time and receive cash compensation in connection with such services. Our clinical trials must also generally be conducted with products produced under cGMP regulations. Our failure to comply with these regulations may require us to repeat clinical trials, which would delay the regulatory approval process.

[Table of Contents](#)

Some of the third parties with whom we contract may also have relationships with other commercial entities, some of which may compete with us. If the third parties conducting our preclinical studies or our clinical trials do not perform their contractual duties or obligations or comply with regulatory requirements, we may need to enter into new arrangements with alternative third parties. This could be costly, and our preclinical studies or clinical trials may need to be extended, delayed, terminated or repeated, and we may not be able to obtain regulatory approval in a timely fashion, or at all, for the applicable product candidate, or to commercialize such product candidate being tested in such studies or trials. If any of our relationships with these third parties terminate, we may not be able to enter into arrangements with alternative third-party contractors or to do so on commercially reasonable terms. Though we plan to carefully manage our relationships with our CROs, there can be no assurance that we will not encounter similar challenges or delays in the future or that these delays or challenges will not have a material adverse impact on our business, financial condition and prospects.

We rely on, and expect to continue relying on, third-party contract manufacturing organizations to manufacture and supply product candidates for us, as well as certain raw materials used in the production thereof. If one of our suppliers or manufacturers fails to perform adequately, we may be required to incur significant delays and costs to find new suppliers or manufacturers.

We currently have no experience in, and we do not own facilities for, manufacturing our product candidates. We rely on, and expect to continue relying upon, third-party manufacturing organizations to manufacture and supply our product candidates and certain raw materials used in the production thereof. Some of our key components for the production of our product candidates may have a limited number of suppliers.

The facilities used by our contract manufacturers to manufacture our product candidates must be approved by the FDA pursuant to inspections that will be conducted after we submit our NDA to the FDA. We expect that we will not control the manufacturing process of, and will be completely dependent on, our contract manufacturing partners for compliance with cGMP requirements, for manufacture of our drug products. If our contract manufacturers cannot successfully manufacture material that conforms to our specifications and the strict regulatory requirements of the FDA, DEA or others, they will not be able to secure and/or maintain DEA registrations and regulatory approval for their manufacturing facilities. In addition, we expect that we will have no control over the ability of our contract manufacturers to maintain adequate quality control, quality assurance and qualified personnel. If the FDA or a comparable foreign regulatory authority does not approve these facilities for the manufacture of our product candidates, or if DEA does not register these facilities for the manufacture of controlled substances, we may need to find alternative manufacturing facilities, which would significantly impact our ability to develop, obtain regulatory approval for or market our product candidates, if approved.

We do not have commercial supply agreements with our suppliers. In the event that we and our suppliers cannot agree to the terms and conditions for them to provide clinical and commercial supply needs, we would not be able to manufacture our product or candidates until a qualified alternative supplier is identified, which could also delay the development of, and impair our ability to commercialize, our product candidates.

The failure of third-party manufacturers or suppliers to perform adequately or the termination of our arrangements with any of them may adversely affect our business.

We could be subject to costly product liability claims related to our clinical trials and product candidates.

Because we plan to conduct clinical trials with human subjects, we face the risk that the use of our product candidates may result in adverse side effects to our patients in our clinical trials. We face even greater risks upon any commercialization of our product candidates. An individual may bring a product liability claim against us alleging that one of our product candidates causes, or is claimed to have caused, an injury or is found to be unsuitable for consumer use. Any product liability claim brought against us, with or without merit, could result in:

Table of Contents

- withdrawal of clinical trial volunteers, investigators, patients or trial sites;
- the inability to commercialize our product candidates;
- decreased demand for our product candidates;
- regulatory investigations that could require costly recalls or product modifications;
- loss of revenue;
- substantial costs of litigation;
- liabilities that substantially exceed our product liability insurance, which we would then be required to pay ourselves;
- an increase in our product liability insurance rates or the inability to maintain insurance coverage in the future on acceptable terms, if at all;
- the diversion of management's attention from our business; and
- damage to our reputation and the reputation of our products.

Product liability claims may subject us to the foregoing and other risks, which could have a material adverse effect on our business, results of operations, financial condition, and prospects.

Our employees, independent contractors, principal investigators, CROs, consultants and vendors may engage in misconduct or other improper activities, including noncompliance with regulatory standards and requirements.

We are exposed to the risk that our employees, independent contractors, principal investigators, CROs, consultants and vendors may engage in fraudulent or other illegal activity. Misconduct by these parties could include intentional, reckless and/or negligent conduct or disclosure of unauthorized activities to us that violates: (1) FDA regulations, including those laws requiring the reporting of true, complete and accurate information to the FDA; (2) manufacturing standards; (3) federal and state healthcare fraud and abuse laws and regulations; or (4) laws that require the true, complete and accurate reporting of financial information or data. Specifically, sales, marketing and business arrangements in the healthcare industry are subject to extensive laws and regulations intended to prevent fraud, kickbacks, self-dealing and other abusive practices. These laws and regulations may restrict or prohibit a wide range of pricing, discounting, marketing and promotion, sales commission, customer incentive programs and other business arrangements. Activities subject to these laws also involve the improper use of information obtained in the course of clinical trials, which could result in regulatory sanctions and serious harm to our reputation. It is not always possible to identify and deter misconduct by our employees and other third parties, and the precautions we take to detect and prevent this activity may not be effective in controlling unknown or unmanaged risks or losses or in protecting us from governmental investigations or other actions or lawsuits stemming from a failure to be in compliance with such laws or regulations. If any such actions are instituted against us, and we are not successful in defending ourselves or asserting our rights, those actions could have a significant impact on our business, including the imposition of civil, criminal and administrative penalties, damages, monetary fines, possible exclusion from participation in Medicare, Medicaid and other federal healthcare programs, contractual damages, reputational harm, diminished profits and future earnings, and curtailment of our operations, any of which could adversely affect our ability to operate our business and our results of operations.

[Table of Contents](#)

We are subject to uncertainty relating to coverage and reimbursement policies which, if not favorable to our product candidates, could hinder or prevent our products' commercial success.

Our ability to commercialize our product candidates, if approved, successfully will depend in part on the extent to which governmental authorities, private health insurers and other third-party payors establish appropriate coverage and reimbursement levels for our product candidates. As a threshold for coverage and reimbursement, third-party payors generally require that drug products have been approved for marketing by the FDA. A primary trend in the U.S. healthcare industry is cost containment. Third-party payors have attempted to control costs by limiting coverage and the amount of reimbursement for particular products and procedures. Increasingly, third-party payors are requiring that companies provide them with predetermined discounts from list prices and are challenging the prices charged for medical products. We cannot assure you that coverage and reimbursement will be available for any product that we commercialize and, if coverage is available, what the level of reimbursement will be. Coverage and reimbursement may impact the demand for, or the price of, any product for which we obtain marketing approval. If coverage and reimbursement are not available or are available only to limited levels, we may not be able to successfully commercialize any product candidate that we successfully develop.

Healthcare reform measures could hinder or prevent our products candidates' commercial success, if approved.

In the United States, there have been, and we anticipate there will continue to be, a number of legislative and regulatory changes to the healthcare system that could impact our ability to sell any of our products profitably if approved. In the United States, the Federal government passed the Patient Protection and Affordable Care Act in 2010, as amended by the Health Care and Education Reconciliation Act (collectively, the "ACA"), which substantially changed the way healthcare is financed by both governmental and private insurers. The ACA contains a number of provisions, including those governing enrollment in federal healthcare programs, reimbursement changes and fraud and abuse, which impact existing government healthcare programs and will result in the development of new programs, including Medicare payment for performance initiatives and improvements to the physician quality reporting system and feedback program. Additionally, the ACA:

- increases the minimum level of Medicaid rebates payable by manufacturers of brand-name drugs from 15.1% to 23.1%;
- requires collection of rebates for drugs paid by Medicaid managed care organizations;
- requires manufacturers to participate in a coverage gap discount program, under which they must agree to offer 50 percent point-of-sale discounts off negotiated prices of applicable brand drugs to eligible beneficiaries during their coverage gap period, as a condition for the manufacturer's outpatient drugs to be covered under Medicare Part D; and
- imposes a non-deductible annual fee on pharmaceutical manufacturers or importers who sell "branded prescription drugs" to specified federal government programs.

The Trump administration and the U.S. Congress have made numerous efforts to modify, repeal, or otherwise invalidate all, or certain provisions of, the ACA. In May 2017, the U.S. House of Representatives voted to pass the American Health Care Act (the "AHCA"), which would repeal numerous provisions of the ACA. The U.S. Senate considered, but did not vote to pass, the AHCA, leaving the ACA largely in place. The Tax Cuts and Jobs Act signed into law in December 2017 repealed the ACA's individual health insurance mandate, which is considered a significant component of the ACA. Uncertainty remains with respect to the impact the Trump administration and the U.S. Congress may have, if any, on the future stability of the ACA and its resulting impact on our business. We expect efforts to modify or repeal the ACA to continue, and the potential impact of such efforts are unclear. Any future changes will likely take time to unfold and could have a significant impact on coverage and reimbursement for healthcare items and services covered by plans that were authorized by the ACA. Increasing emphasis on managed care in the U.S. will continue to put downward pressure on the pricing of products, and cost-control initiatives could have the effect of decreasing the price that we or any of our collaborators may receive for our future products. We expect that the ACA and other healthcare reform initiatives adopted in the future may result in more rigorous coverage criteria and additional downward pressure on the price we may receive for any approved product. We cannot predict with certainty the effect the ACA or other healthcare reform initiatives that may be adopted in the future will have on our business. Our results of operations may be adversely affected by the ACA, changes to the ACA, and by other healthcare reform initiatives adopted in the future.

In addition to the ACA, other legislative changes have been proposed and adopted since the ACA was enacted. On August 2, 2011, the Budget Control Act of 2011 was signed into law, which, among other things, created the Joint Select Committee on Deficit Reduction to recommend to Congress proposals in spending reductions. The Joint Select Committee did not achieve a targeted deficit reduction of at least \$1.2 trillion for the years 2013 through 2021, triggering the legislation's automatic reduction to several government programs. This includes reductions to Medicare payments to providers of 2% per fiscal year, which went into effect on April 1, 2013, and, due to subsequent legislative amendments, will remain in effect through 2025 unless Congressional action is taken. On January 2, 2013, the American Taxpayer Relief Act of 2012 was signed into law, which, among other things, further reduced Medicare payments to several providers, including hospitals, and increased the statute of limitations period for the government to recover overpayments to providers from three to five years. In addition, there has been heightened governmental scrutiny over the manner in which manufacturers set prices for their marketed products, which has resulted in several Congressional inquiries and proposed bills designed to, among other things, reform government program reimbursement methodologies.

[Table of Contents](#)

We expect that additional state and federal healthcare reform measures will be adopted in the future, any of which could limit the amounts that federal and state governments will pay for healthcare products and services, which could result in reduced demand for our product candidates if approved, or additional pricing pressure. The implementation of cost containment measures or other healthcare reform initiatives may prevent us from being able to generate revenue, attain profitability, or commercialize any products for which we may obtain regulatory approval. The continuing efforts of the government, insurance companies, managed care organizations and other payors of healthcare services to make and implement healthcare reforms may adversely affect:

- our ability to set a price we believe is fair for our products;
- our ability to generate revenues and achieve or maintain profitability;
- the availability of capital; and
- our ability to obtain timely approval of our products.

We may be subject, directly or indirectly, to federal and state healthcare fraud and abuse laws, false claims laws, and health information privacy and security laws. If we are unable to comply, or have not fully complied, with such laws, we could face substantial penalties.

If we obtain FDA approval for any of our product candidates and begin commercializing those products in the United States, our operations may be directly, or indirectly through our customers, subject to various federal and state fraud and abuse laws, including, without limitation, the federal Anti-Kickback Statute, the federal False Claims Act, and physician sunshine laws and regulations. These laws may impact, among other things, our proposed sales, marketing, and education programs. In addition, we may be subject to patient privacy regulation by both the federal government and the states in which we conduct our business. The laws that may affect our ability to operate include:

- the federal Anti-Kickback Statute, which prohibits, among other things, persons from knowingly and willfully soliciting, receiving, offering or paying remuneration, directly or indirectly, to induce, or in return for, the purchase or recommendation of an item or service reimbursable under a federal healthcare program, such as the Medicare and Medicaid programs;
- federal civil and criminal false claims laws and civil monetary penalty laws, which prohibit, among other things, individuals or entities from knowingly presenting, or causing to be presented, claims for payment from Medicare, Medicaid, or other third-party payors that are false or fraudulent;
- the federal Health Insurance Portability and Accountability Act of 1996 (“HIPAA”), which created federal criminal statutes that prohibit executing a scheme to defraud any healthcare benefit program and making false statements relating to healthcare matters;
- HIPAA, as amended by the Health Information Technology and Clinical Health Act and its implementing regulations, which imposes certain requirements relating to the privacy, security, and transmission of individually identifiable health information;
- the federal physician sunshine requirements under the ACA, which require manufacturers of drugs, devices, biologics, and medical supplies to report annually to the U.S. Department of Health and Human Services information related to payments and other transfers of value to physicians, other healthcare providers, and teaching hospitals, and ownership and investment interests held by physicians and other healthcare providers and their immediate family members; and
- state law equivalents of each of the above federal laws, such as anti-kickback and false claims laws that may apply to items or services reimbursed by any third-party payor, including commercial insurers; state laws that require pharmaceutical companies to comply with the pharmaceutical industry’s voluntary compliance guidelines and the relevant compliance guidance promulgated by the federal government, or otherwise restrict payments that may be made to healthcare providers and other potential referral sources; state laws that require drug manufacturers to report information related to payments and other transfers of value to physicians and other healthcare providers or marketing expenditures, and state laws governing the privacy and security of health information in certain circumstances, many of which differ from each other in significant ways and may not have the same effect, thus complicating compliance efforts.

[Table of Contents](#)

Because of the breadth of these laws and the narrowness of the statutory exceptions and safe harbors available, it is possible that some of our business activities could be subject to challenge under one or more of such laws. In addition, recent health care reform legislation has strengthened these laws. For example, the ACA, among other things, amends the intent requirement of the federal Anti-Kickback and criminal healthcare fraud statutes. A person or entity no longer needs to have actual knowledge of this statute or specific intent to violate it. Moreover, the ACA provides that the government may assert that a claim including items or services resulting from a violation of the federal Anti-Kickback Statute constitutes a false or fraudulent claim for purposes of the False Claims Act.

If our operations are found to be in violation of any of the laws described above or any other governmental regulations that apply to us, we may be subject to penalties, including civil and criminal penalties, damages, fines, exclusion from participation in government health care programs, such as Medicare and Medicaid, imprisonment, and the curtailment or restructuring of our operations, any of which could adversely affect our ability to operate our business and our results of operations.

We may be subject to requests for access to our product candidates. Demand for compassionate use of our unapproved therapies could strain our resources, delay our drug development activities, negatively impact our regulatory approval or commercial activities, and result in losses.

We are developing product candidates to treat life-threatening illnesses for which there are currently limited therapeutic options. If we experience requests for access to unapproved drugs, we may experience significant disruption to our business which could result in losses. We are a small company with limited resources, and any unanticipated trials or access programs resulting from requests for access could deplete our drug supply, increase our capital expenditures, and otherwise divert our resources from our primary goals.

In addition, legislation referred to as “Right to Try” laws have been introduced at the local and national levels, which are intended to give patients access to unapproved therapies. New and emerging legislation regarding expanded access to unapproved drugs for life-threatening illnesses could negatively impact our business in the future. Either activism or legislation related to requests for access may require us to initiate an unanticipated expanded access program or to make our product candidates more widely available sooner than anticipated.

Patients who receive access to unapproved drugs through compassionate use or expanded access programs have life-threatening illnesses and generally have exhausted all other available therapies. The risk for serious adverse events, including those which may be unrelated to our product candidates, in this patient population is high and could have a negative impact on the safety profile of our product candidate, which could cause significant delays or an inability to successfully commercialize our product candidate and could materially harm our business. In addition, in order to perform the controlled clinical trials required for regulatory approval and successful commercialization of our product candidates, we may also need to restructure or pause any ongoing compassionate use and/or expanded access programs, which could prompt adverse publicity or other disruptions related to current or potential participants in such programs.

[Table of Contents](#)

Risks Related to our Common Stock:

We are subject to the reporting requirements of federal securities laws, which is expensive.

We are a public reporting company in the United States and, accordingly, subject to the information and reporting requirements of the Exchange Act and other federal securities laws, and the compliance obligations of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act. The costs of preparing and filing annual and quarterly reports, proxy statements and other information with the SEC and furnishing audited reports to stockholders causes our expenses to be higher than they would be if we remained a privately-held company.

Our compliance with the Sarbanes-Oxley Act and SEC rules concerning internal controls is time consuming, difficult and costly.

We are a reporting company with the SEC and therefore must comply with Sarbanes-Oxley Act and SEC rules concerning internal controls. It is time consuming, difficult and costly for us to develop and implement the internal controls and reporting procedures required by the Sarbanes-Oxley Act. In order to expand our operations, we will need to hire additional financial reporting, internal control, and other finance staff in order to develop and implement appropriate internal controls and reporting procedures.

Our stock price may be volatile, which may result in losses to our stockholders.

The stock markets have experienced significant price and trading volume fluctuations, and the market prices of companies quoted on the OTCQB, where our shares of common stock will be quoted, generally have been very volatile and have experienced sharp share-price and trading-volume changes. The trading price of our common stock is likely to be volatile and could fluctuate widely in response to many of the following factors, some of which are beyond our control:

- variations in our operating results;
- changes in expectations of our future financial performance, including financial estimates by securities analysts and investors;
- changes in operating and stock price performance of other companies in our industry;
- additions or departures of key personnel; and
- future sales of our common stock.

Domestic and international stock markets often experience significant price and volume fluctuations. These fluctuations, as well as general economic and political conditions unrelated to our performance, may adversely affect the price of our common stock. In particular, following initial public offerings, the market prices for stocks of companies often reach levels that bear no established relationship to the operating performance of these companies. These market prices are generally not sustainable and could vary widely. In the past, following periods of volatility in the market price of a public company's securities, securities class action litigation has often been initiated.

Our common shares are thinly-traded, and in the future, may continue to be thinly-traded, and you may be unable to sell at or near ask prices or at all if you need to sell your shares to raise money or otherwise desire to liquidate such shares.

We cannot predict the extent to which an active public market for our common stock will develop or be sustained due to a number of factors, including the fact that we are a small company that is relatively unknown to stock analysts, stock brokers, institutional investors, and others in the investment community that generate or influence sales volume, and that even if we came to the attention of such persons, they tend to be risk-averse and would be reluctant to follow an unproven company such as ours or purchase or recommend the purchase of our shares until such time as we became more seasoned and viable. As a consequence, there may be periods of several days or more when trading activity in our shares is minimal or non-existent, as compared to a seasoned issuer which has a large and steady volume of trading activity that will generally support continuous sales without an adverse effect on share price. We cannot give you any assurance that a broader or more active public trading market for our common stock will develop or be sustained, or that current trading levels will be sustained.

[Table of Contents](#)

The market price for our common stock may be particularly volatile given our status as a relatively small company and lack of revenues that could lead to wide fluctuations in our share price. You may be unable to sell your common stock at or above your purchase price if at all, which may result in substantial losses to you.

The market for our common shares may be characterized by significant price volatility when compared to seasoned issuers, and we expect that our share price will be more volatile than a seasoned issuer for the indefinite future. The potential volatility in our share price is attributable to a number of factors. First, as noted above, our common shares may be sporadically and/or thinly traded. As a consequence of this lack of liquidity, the trading of relatively small quantities of shares by our stockholders may disproportionately influence the price of those shares in either direction. The price for our shares could, for example, decline precipitously in the event that a large number of our common shares are sold on the market without commensurate demand, as compared to a seasoned issuer that could better absorb those sales without adverse impact on its share price. Secondly, an investment in us is a speculative or “risky” investment due to our lack of revenues or profits to date. As a consequence of this enhanced risk, more risk-averse investors may, under the fear of losing all or most of their investment in the event of negative news or lack of progress, be more inclined to sell their shares on the market more quickly and at greater discounts than would be the case with the stock of a seasoned issuer.

Because we became public by means of a “reverse merger,” we may not be able to attract the attention of major brokerage firm or investors in general.

Additional risks may exist because we became a public company through a “reverse merger.” Securities analysts of major brokerage firms may not provide coverage of us since there is little incentive to brokerage firms to recommend the purchase of our common stock. No assurance can be given that brokerage firms will want to conduct any secondary offerings on behalf of our company in the future. In addition, the SEC has recently issued an investor bulletin warning investors about the risks of investing in companies that enter the U.S. capital markets through a “reverse merger.” The release of such information from the SEC may have the effect of reducing investor interest in companies, such as us, that enter the U.S. capital markets through a “reverse merger.”

We cannot assure you that our common stock will become eligible for listing or quotation on any exchange and the failure to do so may adversely affect your ability to dispose of our common stock in a timely fashion.

In order for our common stock to become eligible for listing or quotation on any exchange, reverse merger companies must have had their securities traded on an over-the-counter market for at least one year, maintained a certain minimum closing price for not less than 30 of the most recent 60 days prior to the filing of an initial listing application and prior to listing, and timely filed with the SEC all required reports since consummation of the reverse merger, including one annual report containing audited consolidated financial statements for a full fiscal year commencing after the date of filing of the Current Report on Form 8-K which discloses the reverse merger. We may not be able to meet all of the filing requirements above and may not be able to satisfy the initial standards for listing or quotation on any exchange in the foreseeable future or at all. Even if we are able to become listed or quoted on an exchange, we may not be able to maintain a listing of the common stock on such stock exchange.

We do not anticipate paying any cash dividends.

We presently do not anticipate that we will pay any dividends on any of our capital stock in the foreseeable future. The payment of dividends, if any, would be contingent upon our revenues and earnings, if any, capital requirements, and general financial condition. The payment of any dividends will be within the discretion of our Board of Directors (the “Board”). We presently intend to retain all earnings, if any, to implement our business plan; accordingly, we do not anticipate the declaration of any dividends in the foreseeable future.

Our common stock may be subject to penny stock rules, which may make it more difficult for our stockholders to sell their common stock.

Broker-dealer practices in connection with transactions in “penny stocks” are regulated by certain penny stock rules adopted by the SEC. Penny stocks generally are equity securities with a price of less than \$5.00 per share. The penny stock rules require a broker-dealer, prior to a purchase or sale of a penny stock not otherwise exempt from the rules, to deliver to the customer a standardized risk disclosure document that provides information about penny stocks and the risks in the penny stock market. The broker-dealer also must provide the customer with current bid and offer quotations for the penny stock, the compensation of the broker-dealer and its salesperson in the transaction, and monthly account statements showing the market value of each penny stock held in the customer’s account. In addition, the penny stock rules generally require that prior to a transaction in a penny stock the broker-dealer make a special written determination that the penny stock is a suitable investment for the purchaser and receive the purchaser’s written agreement to the transaction. These disclosure requirements may have the effect of reducing the level of trading activity in the secondary market for a stock that becomes subject to the penny stock rules.

[Table of Contents](#)

Volatility in our common stock price may subject us to securities litigation.

The market for our common stock is characterized by significant price volatility when compared to seasoned issuers, and we expect that our share price will continue to be more volatile than a seasoned issuer for the indefinite future. In the past, plaintiffs have often initiated securities class action litigation against a company following periods of volatility in the market price of its securities. We may, in the future, be the target of similar litigation. Securities litigation could result in substantial costs and liabilities and could divert management's attention and resources.

We may need additional capital, and the sale of additional shares or other equity securities could result in additional dilution to our stockholders.

We expect our existing cash will be sufficient to fund our capital requirements for at least the next month. We require additional capital for the development and commercialization of our product candidates and may require additional cash resources due to changed business conditions or other future developments, including any investments or acquisitions we may decide to pursue. If our resources are insufficient to satisfy our cash requirements, we will seek to sell additional equity or debt securities or obtain a credit facility. The sale of additional equity securities could result in additional dilution to our stockholders. The incurrence of additional indebtedness would result in increased debt service obligations and could result in operating and financing covenants that would restrict our operations. We cannot assure you that financing will be available in amounts or on terms acceptable to us, if at all.

Our principal stockholders and management own a significant percentage of our stock and will be able to exert significant control over matters subject to stockholder approval.

Certain of our executive officers, directors and large stockholders own a significant percentage of our outstanding capital stock. As of November 11, 2019, our executive officers, directors, holders of 5% or more of our capital stock and their respective affiliates owned approximately 56.0% of our outstanding shares of common stock. As of November 11, 2019, Emerald Health Sciences, our majority stockholder, owned approximately 54.6% of our outstanding shares of common stock. Our Board is controlled by the directors and principal executive officer of Emerald Health Sciences. Accordingly, our directors and executive officers have significant influence over our affairs due to their substantial ownership coupled with their positions on our management team and have substantial voting power to approve matters requiring the approval of our stockholders. For example, these stockholders may be able to control elections of directors, amendments of our organizational documents, or approval of any merger, sale of assets, or other major corporate transaction. This concentration of ownership may prevent or discourage unsolicited acquisition proposals or offers for our common stock that some of our stockholders may believe is in their best interest.

We have a substantial number of authorized common shares available for future issuance that could cause dilution of our stockholders' interest and adversely impact the rights of holders of our common stock.

We have a total of 500,000,000 shares of common stock authorized for issuance and up to 20,000,000 shares of preferred stock with the rights, preferences and privileges that our Board may determine from time to time. As of November 11, 2019, we have reserved 4,512,715 shares for issuance upon the exercise of outstanding options, and 57,943,250 shares for issuance upon the exercise of outstanding warrants. As of November 11, 2019, we had no outstanding preferred stock. As of November 11, 2019, we had 365,904,753 shares of common stock available for issuance. We may seek financing that could result in the issuance of additional shares of our capital stock and/or rights to acquire additional shares of our capital stock. We may also make acquisitions that result in issuances of additional shares of our capital stock. Those additional issuances of capital stock would result in a significant reduction of your percentage interest in us. Furthermore, the book value per share of our common stock may be reduced. This reduction would occur if the exercise price of any issued warrants, the conversion price of any convertible notes is lower than the book value per share of our common stock at the time of such exercise or conversion.

[Table of Contents](#)

The addition of a substantial number of shares of our common stock into the market or by the registration of any of our other securities under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended (the “Securities Act”), may significantly and negatively affect the prevailing market price for our common stock. The future sales of shares of our common stock issuable upon the exercise of outstanding warrants may have a depressive effect on the market price of our common stock, as such warrants would be more likely to be exercised at a time when the price of our common stock is greater than the exercise price.

There is not now, and there may never be, an active, liquid and orderly trading market for our common stock, which may make it difficult for you to sell your shares of our common stock.

There is not now, nor has there been since our inception, any significant trading activity in our common stock or a market for shares of our common stock, and an active trading market for our shares may never develop or be sustained. As a result, investors in our common stock must bear the economic risk of holding those shares for an indefinite period of time. Although our common stock is quoted on the OTCQB, an over-the-counter quotation system, trading of our common stock is extremely limited and sporadic and at very low volumes. We do not now, and may not in the future, meet the initial listing standards of any national securities exchange. We presently anticipate that our common stock will continue to be quoted on the OTCQB or another over-the-counter quotation system in the foreseeable future. In those venues, our stockholders may find it difficult to obtain accurate quotations as to the market value of their shares of our common stock and may find few buyers to purchase their stock and few market makers to support its price. As a result of these and other factors, you may be unable to resell your shares of our common stock at or above the price for which you purchased them, or at all. Further, an inactive market may also impair our ability to raise capital by selling additional equity in the future and may impair our ability to enter into strategic partnerships or acquire companies or products by using our shares of common stock as consideration.

If we are unable to implement and maintain effective internal control over financial reporting, investors may lose confidence in the accuracy and completeness of our reported financial information and the market price of our common stock may be negatively affected.

As a public company, we are required to maintain internal control over financial reporting and to report any material weaknesses in such internal control. Section 404 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act requires that we evaluate and determine the effectiveness of our internal control over financial reporting and provide a management report on the internal control over financial reporting. If we have a material weakness in our internal control over financial reporting, we may not detect errors on a timely basis and our consolidated financial statements may be materially misstated. We may not be able to complete our evaluation, testing and any required remediation in a timely fashion. During the evaluation and testing process, if we identify one or more material weaknesses in our internal control over financial reporting, our management will be unable to conclude that our internal control over financial reporting is effective. Moreover, when we are no longer a smaller reporting company, our independent registered public accounting firm will be required to issue an attestation report on the effectiveness of our internal control over financial reporting. Even if our management concludes that our internal control over financial reporting is effective, our independent registered public accounting firm may conclude that there are material weaknesses with respect to our internal controls or the level at which our internal controls are documented, designed, implemented or reviewed.

If we are unable to conclude that our internal control over financial reporting is effective, or when we are no longer a smaller reporting company, if our auditors were to express an adverse opinion on the effectiveness of our internal control over financial reporting because we had one or more material weaknesses, investors could lose confidence in the accuracy and completeness of our financial disclosures, which could cause the price of our common stock to decline. Internal control deficiencies could also result in a restatement of our financial results in the future.

[Table of Contents](#)

If securities or industry analysts do not publish research or reports about our business, or if they change their recommendations regarding our stock adversely, our stock price and trading volume could decline.

The trading market for our common stock will be influenced by the research and reports that industry or securities analysts publish about us or our business. We do not currently have and may never obtain research coverage by industry or financial analysts. If no or few analysts commence coverage of us, the trading price of our stock would likely decrease. Even if we do obtain analyst coverage, if one or more of the analysts who cover us downgrade our stock, our stock price would likely decline. If one or more of these analysts cease coverage of our company or fail to regularly publish reports on us, we could lose visibility in the financial markets, which in turn could cause our stock price or trading volume to decline.

The issuance of shares upon exercise of outstanding warrants and options may cause immediate and substantial dilution to our existing stockholders.

If the price per share of our common stock at the time of exercise of any warrants, options, or any other convertible securities is in excess of the various conversion or exercise prices of these convertible securities, conversion or exercise of these convertible securities would have a dilutive effect on our common stock. As of November 11, 2019, we had outstanding (i) warrants to purchase up to 57,943,250 shares of our common stock at exercise prices ranging from \$0.00 to \$5.00 per share, and (ii) options to purchase up to 4,512,715 shares of our common stock at exercise prices ranging from \$0.245 to \$0.42 per share. Further, any additional financing that we secure may require the granting of rights, preferences or privileges senior to those of our common stock and which result in additional dilution of the existing ownership interests of our common stockholders.

Our ability to utilize our net operating loss carryforwards and certain other tax attributes may be limited.

Under Section 382 of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended, if a corporation undergoes an “ownership change,” the corporation’s ability to use its pre-change net operating loss carryforwards and other pre-change tax attributes to offset its post-change income may be limited. In general, an “ownership change” occurs if the aggregate stock ownership of one or more stockholders or groups of stockholders who own at least 5% of a corporation’s stock increase their ownership by more than 50 percentage points over their lowest ownership percentage within a rolling three-year period. Similar rules may apply under state tax laws. If it is determined that we have in the past experienced any ownership changes, or if we experience ownership changes as a result of future transactions in our stock, our ability to use our net operating loss carryforwards and other tax attributes to offset U.S. federal taxable income may be subject to limitations, which could potentially result in increased future tax liability to us.

FORWARD-LOOKING STATEMENTS

Statements in this prospectus that are not descriptions of historical facts are forward-looking statements that are based on management’s current expectations and assumptions and are subject to risks and uncertainties. If such risks or uncertainties materialize or such assumptions prove incorrect, our business, operating results, financial condition and stock price could be materially negatively affected. In some cases, you can identify forward-looking statements by terminology including “anticipates,” “believes,” “can,” “continue,” “could,” “estimates,” “expects,” “intends,” “may,” “plans,” “potential,” “predicts,” “should,” “will,” “would” or the negative of these terms or other comparable terminology. Factors that could cause actual results to differ materially from those currently anticipated include those set forth in the section titled “Risk Factors” including, without limitation, risks relating to:

- the results of our research and development activities, including uncertainties relating to the discovery of potential product candidates and the preclinical and clinical testing of our product candidates;
- the early stage of our product candidates presently under development;
- our need for substantial additional funds in order to continue our operations, and the uncertainty of whether we will be able to obtain the funding we need;
- our ability to obtain and, if obtained, maintain regulatory approval of our current product candidates, and any of our other future product candidates, and any related restrictions, limitations, and/or warnings in the label of any approved product candidate;
- our ability to retain or hire key scientific or management personnel;

Table of Contents

- our ability to protect our intellectual property rights that are valuable to our business, including patent and other intellectual property rights;
- our dependence on UM, third-party manufacturers, suppliers, research organizations, testing laboratories and other potential collaborators;
- our ability to develop successful sales and marketing capabilities in the future as needed;
- the size and growth of the potential markets for any of our approved product candidates, and the rate and degree of market acceptance of any of our approved product candidates;
- competition in our industry; and
- regulatory developments in the United States and foreign countries.

We operate in a rapidly-changing environment and new risks emerge from time to time. As a result, it is not possible for our management to predict all risks, nor can we assess the impact of all factors on our business or the extent to which any factor, or combination of factors, may cause actual results to differ materially from those contained in any forward-looking statements we may make. In light of these risks, uncertainties and assumptions, the forward-looking events and circumstances discussed in this prospectus may not occur and actual results could differ materially and adversely from those anticipated or implied in the forward-looking statements. You should not rely upon forward-looking statements as predictions of future events. Although we believe that the expectations reflected in the forward-looking statements are reasonable, we cannot guarantee that the future results, levels of activity, performance or events and circumstances reflected in the forward-looking statements will be achieved or occur. Moreover, neither we nor any other person assumes responsibility for the accuracy and completeness of the forward-looking statements. The forward-looking statements included in this prospectus speak only as of the date hereof, and except as required by law, we undertake no obligation to update publicly any forward-looking statements for any reason after the date of this prospectus to conform these statements to actual results or to changes in our expectations.

USE OF PROCEEDS

We estimate that the net proceeds of this offering will be approximately \$16.8 million from the sale of our units in this offering at the assumed public offering price of \$0.25 per unit, after deducting estimated offering expenses payable by us, assuming the sale of all of the units being offered hereunder. If all of the warrants sold in this offering were to be exercised in cash at an assumed exercise price of \$0.35 per share, we would receive additional net proceeds of approximately \$23.59 million. However, the final exercise price will be a negotiated price. We cannot predict when or if these warrants will be exercised. It is possible that these warrants may expire and may never be exercised. The table below depicts how we plan to utilize the proceeds in the event that 25%, 50%, 75% and 100% of the units in this offering are sold, after deducting estimated offering expenses payable by us.

Use of Proceeds	100%	75%	50%	25%
General corporate purposes	\$ 16,800,000	\$ 12,587,500	\$ 8,375,000	\$ 4,162,500
Total:	\$ 16,800,000	\$ 12,587,500	\$ 8,375,000	\$ 4,162,500

We intend to use the net proceeds from this offering for general corporate purposes, including working capital. We may use the net proceeds from this offering to fund possible acquisitions of other companies, products or technologies, though no such acquisitions are currently contemplated. In addition, a portion of the proceeds raised may be used to pay, in whole or in part, the principal and/or the accrued interest on our Credit Agreement. The terms of the Credit Agreement are described in the section entitled “Certain Relationships and Related Transactions and Director Independence.”

This expected use of our net proceeds from this offering represents our intentions based upon our current plans and business conditions, which could change in the future as our plans and business conditions evolve. The amounts and timing of our actual expenditures may vary significantly depending on numerous factors, including the progress of our drug candidate development, the status of and results from clinical trials, as well as any collaborations that we may enter into with third parties for our drug candidates, and any unforeseen cash needs.

As a result, our management will retain broad discretion over the allocation of the net proceeds from this offering, and investors will be relying on the judgment of our management regarding the application of the net proceeds from this offering. The timing and amount of our actual expenditures will be based on many factors, including cash flows from operations and the anticipated growth of our business.

Any funds we raise in this offering will be immediately available for our use and will not be returned to investors. We will not maintain an escrow, trust, or similar account for the receipt of proceeds from the sale of our shares.

DIVIDEND POLICY

We have never declared or paid any cash dividends on our capital stock. We currently intend to retain all available funds and any future earnings for use in the operation of our business and do not expect to pay any dividends on our capital stock in the foreseeable future. Any future determination to declare dividends will be made at the discretion of our Board, subject to applicable laws, and will depend on a number of factors, including our financial condition, results of operations, capital requirements, contractual restrictions, general business conditions, and other factors that our Board may deem relevant.

[Table of Contents](#)

DILUTION

If you purchase units in this offering, your interest will be diluted to the extent of the difference between the public offering price per unit and the net tangible book value per share of our common stock after this offering. Our net tangible book value (deficit) as of June 30, 2019 was \$(11,641,442) or \$(0.09) per share of common stock (based upon 134,095,247 outstanding shares of common stock as of June 30, 2019). “Net tangible book value (deficit)” is total assets minus the sum of liabilities and intangible assets. “Net tangible book value (deficit) per share” is net tangible book value divided by the total number of shares of common stock outstanding.

After giving effect to the sale by us in this offering of approximately 67,400,000 units in this offering (attributing no value to the warrants or proceeds from the sale of warrants being offered) at the public offering price of \$0.25 per unit, and after deducting the estimated offering expenses that we will pay, our net tangible book value (deficit) as of June 30, 2019 would have been approximately \$5,158,558, or \$0.03 per share of common stock. This amount represents an immediate increase in net tangible book value (deficit) of \$0.11 per share to existing stockholders and an immediate dilution of \$0.22 per share to purchasers in this offering.

The following table illustrates the dilution:

Assumed public offering price per share		\$	0.25
Net tangible book value (deficit) per share as of June 30, 2019	\$	(0.09)	
Increase in net tangible book value (deficit) per share attributable to this offering	\$	<u>0.11</u>	
Pro forma, net tangible book value (deficit) per share after this offering	\$	<u>0.03</u>	
Dilution per share to new investors	\$	<u>0.22</u>	

The dilution information set forth in the table above is illustrative only and will be adjusted based on the actual public offering price and other terms of this offering determined at pricing.

The above table is based on 134,095,247 shares of common stock outstanding as of June 30, 2019 and, unless otherwise indicated, excludes:

- 3,600,073 shares of our common stock issuable upon exercise of outstanding options at a weighted average price of \$0.302 per share;
- 57,943,250 shares of our common stock issuable upon exercise of outstanding warrants with a weighted-average exercise price of \$0.241 per share;
- 15,000,000 shares of our common stock underlying our Credit Agreement
- 9,161,023 shares of our common stock that are reserved for equity awards that may be granted under our equity incentive plans; and
- shares of our common stock issuable upon exercise of the warrants to be issued as part of the units issued in this offering.

CAPITALIZATION

The following table sets forth our cash and our capitalization as of June 30, 2019 on:

- an actual basis; and
- an as adjusted basis giving effect to the sale by us in this offering of 25%, 50%, 75% and 100% all of the 67,400,000 units in this offering at the public offering price of \$0.25 per unit, after deducting expenses and commissions and estimated offering expenses payable by us.

The information set forth in the table below is illustrative only and will be adjusted based on the actual public offering price and other terms of this offering determined at pricing. Cash is not a component of our total capitalization. You should read these tables together with the other information contained in this prospectus, including “Use of Proceeds,” “Management’s Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations” and the historical financial statements and related notes thereto included elsewhere in this prospectus.

[Table of Contents](#)

As of June 30, 2019

	As Adjusted				
	Actual	100% of Maximum	75% of Maximum	50% of Maximum	25% of Maximum
Cash	\$ 2,807,826	\$ 19,607,826	\$ 15,395,326	\$ 11,182,826	\$ 6,970,326
Convertible multi-draw credit agreement, related party, net of discount (1)	3,102,036	3,102,036	3,102,036	3,102,036	3,102,036
Stockholders' deficit:					
Preferred Stock, \$0.001 par value; 20,000,000 shares authorized; no shares issued and outstanding actual or as adjusted	-	-	-	-	-
Common Stock, par value \$0.001; 500,000,000 shares authorized; 134,095,247 shares issued and outstanding, actual; 201,495,247 shares issued and outstanding as adjusted, 100%; 184,645,247 shares issued and outstanding as adjusted, 75%; 167,795,247 shares issued and outstanding as adjusted, 50%; 150,945,247 shares issued and outstanding as adjusted, 25%	134,095	201,495	184,645	167,795	150,945
Additional paid-in capital	20,318,672	37,051,272	32,855,622	28,659,972	24,464,322
Accumulated deficit	(32,094,209)	(32,094,209)	(32,094,209)	(32,094,209)	(32,094,209)
Total stockholders' deficit	(11,641,442)	5,158,558	946,058	(3,266,442)	(7,478,942)
Total capitalization	(8,539,406)	8,260,594	4,048,094	(164,406)	(4,376,906)

(1) The carrying value of the discount at June 30, 2019 is \$2,897,964.

The above table is based on 134,095,247 shares of common stock outstanding as of June 30, 2019 and, unless otherwise indicated, excludes:

- 3,600,073 shares of our common stock issuable upon exercise of outstanding options at a weighted average price of \$0.302 per share
- 57,943,250 shares of our common stock issuable upon exercise of outstanding warrants with a weighted-average exercise price of \$0.241 per share;
- 15,000,000 shares of our common stock underlying our Credit Agreement;
- 9,161,023 shares of our common stock that are reserved for equity awards that may be granted under our equity incentive plans; and
- shares of our common stock issuable upon exercise of the warrants to be issued as part of the units issued in this offering.

PLAN OF DISTRIBUTION

This is a self-underwritten ("best efforts") offering of up 67,400,000 units at a price per unit of \$0.25. This prospectus is part of a registration statement that permits our officers and directors to sell the units being offered by the Company directly to the public. There are no plans or arrangements to enter into any contracts or agreements to sell the shares with a broker or dealer. In offering the securities on our behalf, they will rely on the safe harbor from broker dealer registration set out in Rule 3a4-1 under the Exchange Act.

Our officers and directors will not register as a broker-dealer pursuant to Section 15 of the Exchange Act, in reliance upon Rule 3a4-1, which sets forth those conditions, as noted herein, under which a person associated with an Issuer may participate in the offering of our securities and not be deemed to be a broker-dealer:

1. Our officers and directors not subject to a statutory disqualification, as that term is defined in Section 3(a)(39) of the Act, at the time of his participation;
2. Our officers and directors will not be compensated in connection with their participation by the payment of commissions or other remuneration based either directly or indirectly on transactions in securities;
3. Our officers and directors are not, nor will be at the time of their participation in the offering, an associated person of a broker-dealer; and
4. Our officers and directors meet the conditions of paragraph (a)(4)(ii) of Rule 3a4-1 of the Exchange Act, in that each (A) primarily performs, or intends primarily to perform at the end of the offering, substantial duties for or on behalf of our company, other than in connection with transactions in securities; (B) are not a broker or dealer, or been an associated person of a broker or dealer, within the preceding twelve months; and (C) have not participated in selling and offering securities for any issuer more than once every twelve months other than in reliance on Paragraphs (a)(4)(i) or (a)(4)(iii).

Our officers and directors do not intend to purchase any units in this offering.

If, after the Effective Date of this prospectus, the Company enters into an agreement to sell its units to a broker-dealer as principal and the broker-dealer is acting as an underwriter, we will need to file an amendment to the registration statement. We will need to identify the broker-dealer, provide required information on the plan of distribution, and revise the disclosures in that amendment, and file the agreement as an exhibit to the registration statement. Also, the broker-dealer would have to seek and obtain clearance of the underwriting compensation and arrangements from the FINRA Corporate Finance Department.

[Table of Contents](#)

We will receive all proceeds from the sale of the units being offered, with no minimum purchase requirement. Assuming the sale of all of the units in the offering, after our estimated offering expenses and assuming all of the offered units are sold, we expect the net proceeds from this offering to be approximately \$16.8 million.

State Blue Sky Information

In connection with this offering, we will rely on exemptions from registration for sales of securities in this offering solely to institutional investors pursuant to an exemption provided for sales to these investors under the state Blue Sky laws. The definition of an “institutional investor” varies from state to state but generally includes financial institutions, broker-dealers, banks, insurance companies and other qualified entities.

Transfer Agent and Registrar

Our independent transfer agent is ClearTrust LLC, 16540 Pointe Village Drive, Suite 210, Lutz, Florida 33558.

Stock Market Listing

Our common stock trades on the OTCQB under the symbol “EMBI”.

We do not intend to apply to list the warrants to be issued as part of the units we are offering on the OTCQB or any other exchange.

[Table of Contents](#)

DESCRIPTION OF SECURITIES

We are offering, on a “best efforts” basis, up to 67,400,000 units at a price per unit of \$0.25, each unit consisting of one share of our common stock one warrant to purchase one share of common stock. Each warrant will entitle the holder to purchase one share of common stock. The warrants will expire five years from the date of issuance.

The following description is qualified in its entirety by the provisions of our articles of incorporation, as amended (including all certificates of designation relating to our preferred stock), and our bylaws, all of which are incorporated by reference as exhibits to our registration statement, of which this prospectus forms a part.

Common Stock

The Company's articles of incorporation, as amended, authorize us to issue 500,000,000 shares of common stock, par value \$0.001 per share, of which 134,095,247 shares are issued and outstanding as of November 11, 2019, and 20,000,000 shares of Preferred Stock, \$0.001 par value per share, none of which are outstanding

Voting Rights

Holders of our common stock are entitled to one vote for each share held of record on all matters on which stockholders are entitled to vote generally, including the election or removal of directors. The holders of our common stock do not have cumulative voting rights in the election of directors. The rights, powers, preferences and privileges of holders of our common stock are subject to those of the holders of our outstanding preferred stock and will be subject to those of the holders of any shares of our preferred stock we may authorize and issue in the future.

Our bylaws provide that the presence in person or by proxy of the holders of a majority of the votes entitled to be cast on a matter at a meeting shall constitute a quorum of stockholders for that matter. If a quorum exists, and unless a higher proportion of the votes is required pursuant to our articles of incorporation or applicable law, an action of the stockholders entitled to vote on a particular matter shall be approved if the votes cast in favor such action exceed the votes cast against such action. However, our bylaws further provide that directors are to be elected by a majority of the shares entitled to vote, either in person or by proxy, at the meeting held for the purpose of such election. Pursuant to our bylaws and Nevada law, a director may be removed by the vote of stockholders representing not less than two-thirds of the voting power of the issued and outstanding stock entitled to vote.

Our bylaws also permit stockholders to take action by written consent pursuant to Nevada law, which provides that any action required or permitted to be taken at a meeting of the stockholders may be taken without a meeting if, before or after the action, a written consent thereto is signed by stockholders holding at least a majority of the voting power, except that if a different proportion of voting power is required for such an action at a meeting, then that proportion of written consents is required.

Dividend Rights

The holders of our common stock are entitled to receive such dividends as may be declared by our Board out of funds legally available for dividends. Our Board is not obligated to declare a dividend. Any future dividends will be subject to the discretion of our board of directors and will depend upon, among other things, future earnings, the operating and financial condition of our company, its capital requirements, general business conditions and other pertinent factors. We do not anticipate that dividends will be paid in the foreseeable future.

Miscellaneous Rights and Provisions

In the event of our liquidation or dissolution, whether voluntary or involuntary, each share of our common stock is entitled to share ratably in any assets available for distribution to holders of our common stock after satisfaction of all liabilities.

[Table of Contents](#)

Our common stock is not convertible or redeemable and has no conversion rights. There are no conversions, redemption, sinking fund or similar provisions regarding our common stock.

Our common stock, after the fixed consideration thereof has been paid or performed, is not subject to assessment, and the holders of our common stock are not individually liable for the debts and liabilities of our company.

No stockholder shall be entitled as a matter of right to subscribe for or receive additional shares of any class of our stock, whether presently or hereafter authorized, or any bonds, debentures or securities convertible into stock, but such additional shares of stock or other securities convertible into stock may be issued or disposed of by our Board to such persons and on such terms as in its discretion it shall deem advisable.

Our bylaws provide that any provision of our bylaws may be amended by a majority vote of the stockholders at any annual meeting or at any special meeting called for that purpose. Our Board may amend the bylaws or adopt additional bylaws, but is not permitted to alter or repeal any bylaw adopted by our stockholders.

Anti-Takeover Provisions

Some features of the Nevada Revised Statutes (the “NRS”), which are further described below, may have the effect of deterring third parties from making takeover bids for control of our company or may be used to hinder or delay a takeover bid. This would decrease the chance that our stockholders would realize a premium over market price for their shares of common stock as a result of a takeover bid.

Business Combinations and Acquisition of Control Shares

Pursuant to provisions in our articles of incorporation, we have elected not to be governed by certain Nevada statutes that may have the effect of discouraging corporate takeovers.

Nevada’s “combinations with interested stockholders” statutes (NRS 78.411 through 78.444, inclusive) prohibit specified types of business “combinations” between certain Nevada corporations and any person deemed to be an “interested stockholder” for two years after such person first becomes an “interested stockholder” unless the corporation’s board of directors approves the combination (or the transaction by which such person becomes an “interested stockholder”) in advance, or unless the combination is approved by the board of directors and sixty percent of the corporation’s voting power not beneficially owned by the interested stockholder, its affiliates and associates. Furthermore, in the absence of prior approval certain restrictions may apply even after such two-year period. For purposes of these statutes, an “interested stockholder” is any person who is (1) the beneficial owner, directly or indirectly, of ten percent or more of the voting power of the outstanding voting shares of the corporation, or (2) an affiliate or associate of the corporation and at any time within the two previous years was the beneficial owner, directly or indirectly, of ten percent or more of the voting power of the then-outstanding shares of the corporation. The definition of the term “combination” is sufficiently broad to cover most significant transactions between a corporation and an “interested stockholder.” Our original articles of incorporation provided that these statutes will not apply to us and such provision remains in effect.

Nevada’s “acquisition of controlling interest” statutes (NRS 78.378 through 78.3793, inclusive) contain provisions governing the acquisition of a controlling interest in certain Nevada corporations. These “control share” laws provide generally that any person that acquires a “controlling interest” in certain Nevada corporations may be denied voting rights, unless a majority of the disinterested stockholders of the corporation elects to restore such

voting rights. Our original articles of incorporation provided that these statutes will not apply to us and such provision remains in effect. Absent such a provision in our articles of incorporation or bylaws, these laws would apply to us if we were to have 200 or more stockholders of record (at least 100 of whom have addresses in Nevada appearing on our stock ledger) and do business in the State of Nevada directly or through an affiliated corporation, unless our articles of incorporation or bylaws in effect on the tenth day after the acquisition of a controlling interest provide otherwise. These laws provide that a person acquires a “controlling interest” whenever a person acquires shares of a subject corporation that, but for the application of these provisions of the NRS, would enable that person to exercise (1) one-fifth or more, but less than one-third, (2) one-third or more, but less than a majority or (3) a majority or more, of all of the voting power of the corporation in the election of directors. Once an acquirer crosses one of these thresholds, shares which it acquired in the transaction taking it over the threshold and within the 90 days immediately preceding the date when the acquiring person acquired or offered to acquire a controlling interest become “control shares” to which the voting restrictions described above apply.

[Table of Contents](#)

In addition, NRS 78.139 also provides that directors may resist a change or potential change in control if the directors, by majority vote of a quorum, determine that the change is opposed to, or not in, the best interests of the corporation.

Preferred Stock

Our articles of incorporation authorized the issuance of up to 20,000,000 shares of preferred stock in one or more series with such designations, voting powers, if any, preferences and relative, participating, optional or other special rights, and such qualifications, limitations and restrictions, as are determined by our Board in accordance with Nevada law. No shares of preferred stock are outstanding as of the date of this prospectus.

Warrants

As of November 11, 2019, we had outstanding warrants to purchase an aggregate of 57,943,250 shares of our common stock.

Warrants to be issued in this offering

The following is a summary of the material terms of the warrants to be issued as part of the units issued in this offering. This summary is not complete and is qualified in its entirety by reference to the warrants, the form of which has been filed as an exhibit to the registration statement of which this prospectus is a part. All warrants will be issued in book-entry, or uncertificated, form.

Exercisability

Each warrant will be exercisable at any time and will expire two years from the date of issuance. The warrants will be exercisable, at the option of each holder, in whole or in part by delivering to us a duly executed exercise notice and payment in full for the number of shares of our common stock purchased upon such exercise, except in the case of a cashless exercise as discussed below.

The number of shares of common stock issuable upon exercise of the warrants is subject to adjustment in certain circumstances, including a stock split of, stock dividend on, or a subdivision, combination or recapitalization of the common stock.

Cashless Exercise

If at the time of exercise there is no effective registration statement registering, or the prospectus contained therein is not available for issuance of, the shares issuable upon exercise of the warrant, the holder may only exercise the warrant on a cashless basis. When exercised on a cashless basis, a portion of the warrant is cancelled in payment of the purchase price payable in respect of the number of shares of our common stock purchasable upon such exercise.

Exercise Price.

Each warrant represents the right to purchase one share of common stock at an assumed exercise price of \$0.35 per share. In addition, the exercise price per share is subject to adjustment for stock dividends, distributions, subdivisions, combinations, or reclassifications. Subject to limited exceptions, a holder of warrants will not have the right to exercise any portion of the warrant to the extent that, after giving effect to the exercise, the holder, together with its affiliates, and any other person acting as a group together with the holder or any of its affiliates, would beneficially own in excess of 4.99% of the number of shares of our common stock outstanding immediately after giving effect to its exercise. The holder, upon notice to the Company, may increase or decrease the beneficial ownership limitation provisions of the warrant, provided that in no event shall the limitation exceed 9.99% of the number of shares of our common stock outstanding immediately after giving effect to the exercise of the warrant.

[Table of Contents](#)

Transferability.

Subject to applicable laws and restrictions, a holder may transfer a warrant upon surrender of the warrant to us with a completed and signed assignment in the form attached to the warrant. The transferring holder will be responsible for any tax that liability that may arise as a result of the transfer.

Rights as Stockholder.

Except as set forth in the warrant, the holder of a warrant, solely in such holder's capacity as a holder of a warrant, will not be entitled to vote, to receive dividends, or to any of the other rights of our stockholders.

Fundamental Transactions.

In the event we effect certain mergers, consolidations, sales of substantially all of our assets, tender or exchange offers, reclassifications or share exchanges in which our common stock is effectively converted into or exchanged for other securities, cash or property, we consummate a business combination in which another person acquires 50% of the outstanding shares of our common stock, or any person or group becomes the beneficial owner of 50% of the aggregate ordinary voting power represented by our issued and outstanding common stock, then, upon any subsequent exercise of the warrants, the holders of the warrants will have the right to receive any shares of the acquiring corporation or other consideration it would have been entitled to receive if it had been a holder of the number of shares of common stock then issuable upon exercise of the warrants.

Amendments and Waivers.

The provisions of each warrant may be modified or amended or the provisions thereof waived with the written consent of us and the holder.

BUSINESS

History

The Company was incorporated in the State of Nevada on March 16, 2011 as Load Guard Transportation, Inc., and subsequently changed its name to Load Guard Logistics, Inc. in 2012.

On October 31, 2014, Load Guard Logistics, Inc. ("LGL") closed an Agreement and Plan of Merger, dated October 17, 2014 (the "Merger Agreement"), with Nemus Acquisition Corp. ("Acquisition Sub"), Nemus Bioscience, Inc. ("Name Change Merger Sub"), and Nemus ("Nemus"), pursuant to which Acquisition Sub merged with and into Nemus and Nemus survived as a wholly-owned subsidiary of LGL (the "Merger"). On November 3, 2014, LGL changed its name to "Nemus Bioscience, Inc." by merging with Name Change Merger Sub.

On October 31, 2014, immediately prior to the consummation of the Merger, the Company entered into an Assignment and Assumption Agreement with LGT, Inc., a wholly owned subsidiary, pursuant to which the Company transferred all of its assets and liabilities to LGT.

On October 31, 2014, the Company entered into a Share Repurchase and Cancellation Agreement with LGT, Yosbani Mendez and Francisco Mendez, pursuant to which the Company repurchased 5,431,460 shares of its common stock from Yosbani Mendez and Francisco Mendez for a repurchase price of all of the issued and outstanding shares of LGT. Upon the repurchase, the Company cancelled all of such repurchased shares.

Prior to the Merger, we were a transportation and logistics company engaged primarily in hauling truckload shipments of general commodities in both interstate and intrastate commerce. Following the Merger, we became a biopharmaceutical company focused on the discovery, development and commercialization of cannabinoid-based therapeutics.

In January 2018, the Company entered into a securities purchase agreement with Emerald Health Sciences, pursuant to which Emerald Health Sciences purchased a majority of the outstanding equity in the Company, resulting in a change in control of the Company. As part of the transaction, the members of the Company's Board, with the exception of Dr. Brian Murphy, the Company's CEO, tendered their resignation, and Emerald Health Sciences appointed two nominees to the Board. In October 2018, the Board appointed Dr. Avtar Dhillon, the Chairman, CEO and President of Emerald Health Sciences, as the Executive Chairman of the Company's Board.

[Table of Contents](#)

Effective March 25, 2019, the Company changed its name to Emerald Bioscience, Inc.

In August 2019, we formed a new subsidiary in Australia, EMBI Australia Pty Ltd. in order to qualify for the Australian government's research and development tax credit for research and development dollars spent in Australia. The primary purpose of EMBI Australia Pty Ltd. is to conduct clinical trials for our product candidates.

As of the date of this prospectus, the Company has devoted substantially all of its efforts to securing product licenses, carrying out research and development activities, building infrastructure and raising capital. We have not yet realized revenue from our planned principal operations.

Business Overview

We are a biopharmaceutical company targeting the discovery, development and commercialization of cannabinoid-based therapeutics through a number of license agreements with the University of Mississippi ("UM"). UM holds the only contract to cultivate cannabis for research purposes on behalf of the Federal Government of the United States since 1968, and it has significant expertise in cannabis cultivation and the extraction, separation, processing and manufacture of cannabis extracts as well as the chemistry and physiology of cannabinoid molecules. We were established and continue to be, a development and commercialization partner of UM, working to bring the University's proprietary cannabinoid molecules through the development process.

Our Strategic Partnership

In July 2013, we entered into a Memorandum of Understanding (the “MOU”), with UM to engage in joint research of extracting, manipulating, and studying cannabinoids in certain forms to develop intellectual property with the intention of creating and commercializing therapeutic medicines. The MOU provided that we own all intellectual property developed solely by our employees and will jointly own all intellectual property developed jointly between Emerald Bioscience and UM employees. The term of the MOU was five years and the parties agreed to enter into separate research agreements upon the identification of patentable technologies. This MOU resulted in the Company entering into several licenses and research agreements with UM related to a prodrug of tetrahydrocannabinol (“THC”) and an analog of cannabidiol (“CBD”). The term of the MOU expired in 2018 and was not renewed because the Company and UM had entered into a number of licenses for the aforementioned compounds.

UM 5050 Pro-Drug and UM 8930 Analog Agreements

In July 2018, the Company renewed its ocular licenses for UM 5050, related to the pro-drug formulation of tetrahydrocannabinol (“THC”), and UM 8930, related to an analog formulation of cannabidiol (“CBD”). On May 24, 2019, the ocular delivery licenses were replaced by “all fields of use” licenses for both UM 5050 and UM 8930 (the “License Agreements”). Pursuant to these license agreements, UM granted the Company an exclusive, perpetual license, including, with the prior written consent of UM, the right to sublicense, to intellectual property related to UM 5050 and UM 8930 for all fields of use.

The License Agreements contain certain milestone payments, royalty and sublicensing fees payable by the Company, as defined therein. Each License Agreement provides for an annual maintenance fee of \$75,000 payable on the anniversary of the effective date. The upfront payment for UM 5050 is \$100,000 and the upfront payment for UM 8930 is \$200,000. Additionally, there is also a \$200,000 fee due within 30 days upon receipt of the first United States Patent and Trademark Office Notice of Allowance for UM 8930. The milestone payments payable for each license are as follows:

- i) \$100,000 paid within 30 days following the submission of the first Investigational New Drug Application to the Food and Drug Administration or an equivalent application to a regulatory agency anywhere in the world, for a product;
- ii) \$200,000 paid within 30 days following the first submission of a NDA, or an equivalent application to a regulatory agency anywhere in the world, for each product that is administered in a different route of administration from that of the early submitted product(s); and
- iii) \$400,000 paid within 30 days following the approval of a NDA, or an equivalent application to a regulatory agency anywhere in the world, for each product that is administered in a different route of administration from that of the early approved product(s).

[Table of Contents](#)

The royalty percentage due on net sales under each License Agreement is in the mid-single digits. The Company must also pay to UM a portion of all licensing fees received from any sublicensees, subject to a minimum royalty on net sales, and the Company is required to reimburse patent costs incurred by UM related to the licensed products. The royalty obligations apply by country and by licensed product, and end upon the later of the date that no valid claim of a licensed patent covers a licensed product in a given country, or 10 years after the first commercial sale of such licensed product in such country.

Each License Agreement continues, unless terminated, until the later of the expiration of the last to expire of the patents or patent applications within the licensed technology or the expiration of our payment obligations under the License Agreement. UM may terminate each License Agreement, by giving written notice of termination, upon the Company's material breach of the License Agreement, including failure to make payments or satisfy covenants, representations or warranties without cure, noncompliance, a bankruptcy event, the Company's dissolution or cessation of operations, the Company's failure to make reasonable efforts to commercialize at least one product or failure to keep at least one product on the market after the first commercial sale for a continuous period of one year, other than for reasons outside the Company's control, or the Company's failure to meet certain pre-established development milestones. The Company may terminate each License Agreement upon 60 days' written notice to UM.

UM 5070 License Agreement

In January 2017, we entered into a license agreement with UM pursuant to which UM granted us an exclusive, perpetual license, including the right to sublicense, to intellectual property related to a platform of cannabinoid-based molecules ("UM 5070"), to research, develop and commercialize products for the treatment of infectious diseases. The license agreement culminates roughly one year of screening and target molecule identification studies especially focused on therapy-resistant infectious organisms like Methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* ("MRSA").

We paid UM an upfront license fee under the license agreement. Under the license agreement, we are also responsible for annual maintenance fees that will be credited against royalties in the current fiscal year, contingent milestone payments upon achievement of development and regulatory milestones, and royalties on net sales of licensed products sold for commercial use. The aggregate milestone payments due under the license agreement if all of the milestones are achieved is \$700,000 and the royalty percentage due on net sales is in the mid-single digits. We must also pay to UM a percentage of all licensing fees we receive from any sublicensees, subject to a minimum royalty on net sales by such sublicensees. Our royalty obligations apply on a country by country and licensed product by licensed product basis, and end upon the later of the date that no valid claim of a licensed patent covers a licensed product in a given country, or ten years after first commercial sale of such licensed product in such country.

The license agreement continues, unless terminated, until the later of the expiration of the last to expire of the patents or patent applications within the licensed technology or expiration of our payment obligations under the license. UM may terminate the license agreement, effective with the giving of notice, if: (a) we fail to pay any material amount payable to UM under the license agreement and do not cure such failure within 60 days after UM notifies us of such failure, (b) we materially breach any covenant, representation or warranty in the license agreement and do not cure such breach within 60 days

after UM notifies us of such breach, (c) we fail to comply in any material respect with the terms of the license and do not cure such noncompliance within 60 days after UM notifies us of such failure, (d) we are subject to a bankruptcy event, (e) we dissolve or cease operations or (f) if after the first commercial sale of a product during the term of the license agreement, we materially fail to make reasonable efforts to commercialize at least one product or fail to keep at least one product on the market after the first commercial sale for a continuous period of 1 year, other than for reasons outside our control. We may terminate the license agreement upon 60 days' written notice to UM.

[Table of Contents](#)

Our Product Candidates

Cannabinoids are a class of chemically diverse compounds that are mainly found in extracts from the cannabis plant. These compounds express their physiological response by binding to specific cannabinoid receptors (CB1 and CB2), which are found throughout the body. Some cannabinoids have been observed to exert multiple effects on the human body, including, but not limited to: impacting the immune response, nervous system function and repair,

gastrointestinal maintenance and motility, motor function in muscles, pancreatic functionality, modulating inflammation and tissue repair, blood sugar regulation, and integrity of function in the eye (including the optic nerve). Cannabis and specific cannabinoids have been studied widely, with limited published data suggesting the potential for these compounds to be used in treating many disorders or alleviating disease-associated symptoms.

We are focused on the development of early stage cannabinoid product candidates. The following table summarizes certain information regarding our cannabinoid product candidates:

Product Candidate	Indication	Development Status
NB1111	Glaucoma	Preclinical
NB2222	Multiple Ocular Targets	Preclinical
NB3111	MRSA	Research

NB1111

Glaucoma is an ocular neuropathy associated with the initiation of programmed cell death, known as apoptosis, of the retinal ganglion cells (“RGCs”) of the optic nerve, resulting in progressive and irreversible loss of vision. Intraocular pressure (“IOP”) has been identified as an important risk factor in the pathogenesis of this disease. Elevated IOP can lead to damage of RGC axons through vascular ischemia by compromising blood flow to the cells, and physical crush injury as the elevated ocular pressure compresses these delicate cells. Cannabinoid receptors are highly concentrated in the eye, especially in organs of the anterior compartment that help regulate IOP, and the posterior compartment in the area of the retina and optic nerve. Stimulation of cannabinoid receptors by THC has been previously shown to lower IOP in both animal and human studies.

Our lead ocular compound is NB1111, a prodrug of THC. The molecule has been formulated to make the usually lipophilic THC more hydrophilic to allow for improved transport across membranes. In 2013 and 2014, UM conducted studies of the formulation in the rabbit ocular model which showed that the molecule was able to penetrate all chambers of the eye which could potentially broaden the proposed therapeutic indications of interest to diseases of the eye that affect the retina and optic nerve, such as macular degeneration or diabetic retinopathy. These studies also revealed that the formulation was able to achieve potentially therapeutic concentrations in the anterior compartment, vitreous humor, and posterior compartment of the normal rabbit eye, which is very similar to the human eye in anatomy and physiology. The rabbit ocular model is an accepted animal model for regulatory agencies when considering a candidate drug for human testing and this data will be submitted as part of the investigational new drug application (“IND”) to the FDA.

Additional studies using an alpha-chymotrypsin induced glaucoma model in rabbits were performed by UM in 2013 and 2014 under a grant from the National Institutes of Health (the “NIH”). Those studies showed that NB1111 was able to reduce IOP by 45% to 50%. Reduction in IOP was successful in an almost linear dose-responsive manner, with greater decline in IOP associated with higher dosage concentration. The decline in IOP observed in the rabbit model correlated to historical human data when patients were exposed to systemically administered THC via inhalational methods. The human studies were conducted by the NIH and the U.S. Army in the 1970’s where glaucoma patients for the NIH study and normal volunteers for the U.S. Army study were exposed to THC by smoking marijuana. Patients tested by the NIH exhibited a decline in IOP ranging from 35% to as high as 65%, correlated to the amount of THC in the plasma. Normal volunteers in the U.S. Army study also showed a decrease in IOP of approximately 10% to 20% in a setting of normotension. While THC from smoking marijuana was able to reduce IOP in humans, the effect was short lived given the short half-life of the THC molecule. The half-life of the pro-drug used in the rabbit glaucoma model was longer, but still pointed to the need to formulate the pro-drug in a way to lengthen the half-life that would be consistent with once-daily dosing of a marketed product.

We examined the compound in further testing using a nanoparticle delivery system to prolong the drug’s biologic half-life in late 2015 and 2016. The studies were conducted by UM and placed NB1111 into a solid lipid-nanoparticle system (“SLN”) to deliver the drug to the eye using topical drop administration. The SLN delivery of NB1111 was administered to rabbits that underwent elevated IOP induction using the alpha-chymotrypsin model. Data from that experiment confirmed previous studies that showed administration of NB1111 resulted in a 45% reduction in IOP from baseline with a half-life consistent with five to six-times per day dosing. When NB1111 was administered via SLN delivery, the lower concentration of NB1111 (0.4% equivalent THC) exhibited a decrease in IOP of approximately 20% while the higher concentration of NB1111 (0.6% equivalent THC) lowered IOP by a maximum of 38%. The use of SLN technology lengthened the physiologic half-life of NB1111 equivalent to dosing the drug two to three times a day. Subsequently, the formulation being developed for human studies will involve encapsulating the drug in a nanoemulsion complemented with the use of the emulsifier, Carbopol, to increase the residence time of the drug on the eye. Testing of this formulation in a normotensive animal model revealed statistically significant lowering of the IOP when compared to both latanoprost and timolol, as well as extended pharmacologic activity time that could possibly support once daily dosing.

[Table of Contents](#)

Further animal experimentation conducted in 2016-2017 examined both the penetration and concentration of NB1111 in key organs of the eye. The data revealed that IOP declined in a concentration-time dependent manner and could be correlated to the concentration of THC in organs regulating IOP, such as the trabecular meshwork in the anterior compartment and the retina-choroid in the posterior compartment. The data was important for demonstrating a direct causal relationship between the penetration and concentration of THC with IOP-lowering capability and the presence of THC in multiple compartments of the eye. Additionally, neither free-THC nor 11-hydroxy-THC (the main active metabolite of THC) was detected in the peripheral circulation of the test animals, indicating that the topical dosage of the test compound remained restricted to the eye.

In the second half of 2020, we anticipate launching the Company's first in-human studies of its lead drug candidate, NB1111, to be conducted in healthy volunteers and patients with glaucoma and ocular hypertension in Australia (the "Clinical Trial"). Initially, we plan to conduct single-ascending dose ("SAD") and multiple-ascending dose ("MAD") studies to establish physiological activity in humans to define a dosing therapeutic window and to validate an ocular formulation for larger follow-on studies. Subsequently, Phase 2 studies will be advanced provided initial human clinical data point to IOP lowering activity balanced by safety parameters. Phase 2 studies in glaucoma/ocular hypertension are expected to be conducted over 7 to 28 days with supporting safety labs monitored concurrently with dosing, including validated assays to detect any evidence of THC in the peripheral circulation of those dosed. Given that IOP data is objectively measured, we will decide whether to conduct a subsequent Phase 2b study or go directly to a larger Phase 3 clinical trial based on the quality of the data collected in the Phase 2a study and the advice provided by the FDA or other regulatory bodies.

NB2222

NB2222 is a prototype ocular formulation of the proprietary Emerald Bioscience CBD analog. We have embarked on studies with UM exploring the utility of our drug candidate NB2222 as an eye drop emulsion for the potential treatment and management of several eye diseases, including uveitis, dry eye syndrome, macular degeneration and diabetic retinopathy. Data presented at the American Association of Pharmaceutical Scientists (AAPS) meeting held in November 2017 revealed that this early formulation of the CBD analog was able to penetrate multiple compartments of the eye, including reaching the retina and the optic nerve. Further testing will need to be conducted to assess biomarkers for the possible utility of this compound as a therapeutic agent.

NB3111

MRSA was first described in 1961 after the introduction of the antibiotic, methicillin, and since that time, the prevalence of the organism has increased globally in both community and healthcare settings. The prevalence of MRSA in intensive care units in the United States has been estimated to be 60% (Am J Infect Control 2004; 32:470) with more than 90,000 invasive MRSA infections occurring annually in the United States resulting in more than 18,000 deaths (JAMA 2007; 298: 1763-71). Annual costs for treating MRSA in the United States are projected to exceed \$4 billion, accounting for a collective eight million extra hospital days annually (ISPOR; 10th Annual Meeting, Wash D.C., May 2005; Pew Foundation Research Brief, April, 2012).

MRSA is classically resistant to conventional antibiotics to treat staph infections such as fluoroquinolones, beta-lactams, and macrolides. Most patients who develop MRSA infections are usually colonized with either a community acquired strain (CA-MRSA) or healthcare-associated strain (HA-MRSA). Therefore, antibiotic development against MRSA can take three approaches: (a) decolonization, (b) treatment of localized soft tissue infections, or (c) systemic antibiotic for generalized sepsis.

[Table of Contents](#)

Cannabinoid molecules have been shown in in vitro studies conducted by third parties to possess anti-infective activity against a variety of MRSA strains. We entered into a research agreement with UM to explore this area in 2015 and have tested a variety of cannabinoids in various strengths, combinations, and delivery systems against a variety of MRSA species found in community, healthcare, and institutional settings such as nursing homes, correctional facilities, and military quarters. As discussed above in “Our Strategic Partnership – UM 5070 License Agreement,” in January 2017, we entered into a license agreement with UM pursuant to which UM granted us an exclusive, perpetual license, including the right to sublicense, to intellectual property related to UM 5070, a platform of cannabinoid-based molecules to research, develop and commercialize products for the treatment of infectious diseases.

Other Potential Products

The Company continues to plan to work with UM to explore other potential indications and associated routes of administration based on the expanded UM 5050 and UM 8930 all fields licenses. The Company’s decision to advance a potential therapeutic candidate will be influenced by a number of criteria, including but not limited to pre-clinical data, synthesis and formulation capability as well as prevailing market conditions.

Our Competitive Strengths

Cannabis is subject to strict regulation in the United States. Cannabis and cannabis extracts are classified by the U.S. Drug Enforcement Administration (the “DEA”), as a Schedule I substance, which means that, under federal law, it has no established medicinal use and may not be marketed or sold in the United States. In addition, the United States is a party to the Single Convention on Narcotic Drugs, which imposes certain requirements and restrictions on member parties with respect to the cultivation and wholesale trade in cannabis. Since 1968, UM has held the only contract with the Federal Government to cultivate cannabis on its behalf for research purposes and holds the requisite DEA registrations authorizing it to engage in that activity. The contract, which is open for competitive bidding at periodic intervals, is administered by the National Institute on Drug Abuse (“NIDA”), an agency within the NIH. UM’s current contract was awarded in 2015 and runs for a base year of one year with four one-year options. Although in August 2016 the DEA announced that it would consider granting registrations for the cultivation of cannabis for research and development purposes outside of the NIDA contract process, we are not aware of any entity that has received such a registration under this process. As the sole contract holder since 1968, UM has developed significant expertise in the extraction, separation, processing and manufacture of cannabinoids. UM has also engaged in the cultivation of cannabis and the extraction of cannabinoids for purposes of developing drug product candidates apart from its role as NIDA contractor. We have entered into several research and license agreements with UM and view this collaborative association as a significant strategic advantage in the marketplace.

The only cannabinoid products that are currently approved as drugs in the United States and, to our knowledge, all cannabinoid products in late-stage development, are predominantly orally-delivered products. Cannabinoids, when ingested orally, are subject to significant first pass metabolism by the liver and potential drug-drug interactions, resulting in very high inter-patient and intra-patient variation in bioavailability which can potentially compromise both efficacy and safety. This has been published in the literature and in product labeling by regulatory agencies worldwide. These independent assessments correlate with highly variable response rates and safety profiles which, in some cases, have been deemed to have marginal clinical utility.

We have licensed from UM the rights to a pro-drug formulation of THC. Data from UM supports the delivery of the pro-drug through absorptive routes other than the gastrointestinal tract, which we believe has the potential to mitigate the issue of first-pass metabolism by the liver, potentially enhancing drug bioavailability and predictive pharmacokinetics.

We are also working with UM and other parties on methods to formulate and deliver a variety of other pharmaceutical-grade cannabinoids to better manage symptoms and/or treat diseases.

[Table of Contents](#)

Our Business Strategy

Our goal is to become a premier developer of prescriptive cannabinoid-based medicines for global markets with significant unmet medical needs. Our current operating strategy includes:

- selection of potential clinical targets based on internal and external published data, access to appropriate cannabinoids, and the impact of both developmental and market conditions;
- prioritization of product candidates based on the potential clinical utility of associated target indications;
- utilization, where feasible, of naturally-derived drug prototypes leading to synthetically produced cannabinoid derivatives optimized for development and commercialization;
- development and execution of an intellectual property strategy;
- development and advancement of our current product pipeline;
- outsourcing services, such as use of Clinical Research Organizations (“CROs”) and contract manufacturers for the API, where possible and appropriate;
- obtaining regulatory approval from the FDA, EMA, and other appropriate regulatory agencies for product candidates;
- research and development of additional target indications for cannabinoid product candidates; and
- partnering, out-licensing, or selling approved products, if any, to optimize Company efficiencies to bring state-of-the-art therapeutics to patients.

Sales and Marketing

We have not established a sales, marketing or product distribution infrastructure because our lead product candidates are still in research, discovery or preclinical development stages. If and when we obtain approval to market any of our product candidates, we will evaluate what we believe to be the optimal commercialization path for the Company, the respective product candidate, and patients. Commercialization paths may include licensing, selling, or partnering with other commercial partners. We may also choose to build a commercial sales and marketing team for some or all of our product candidates.

Manufacturing

We do not own or operate, and currently have no plans to establish, any manufacturing facilities for final manufacture. We currently rely, and expect to continue to rely, on third parties for the manufacture of our product candidates for preclinical and clinical testing, as well as for commercial manufacture of any products that we may commercialize.

We entered into agreements with AMRI in February 2016, July 2018 and April 2019 for the development and manufacture of our proprietary cannabinoid-based APIs. In late 2016, we finalized a commitment with Teewinot Life Sciences, working in conjunction with AMRI, to manufacture biosynthetically produced cannabinoids derivatives licensed from UM to be used in clinical trials or commercialized products. It is anticipated that the biosynthetically generated API will eventually form the basis of our drug candidates NB1111 in development for glaucoma and NB2222 for ocular diseases. In August 2019, the Company terminated its ongoing agreements with AMRI. The Company entered into an agreement with Noramco in February 2019 to develop scale-up synthesis methods and to manufacture the analog derivative, CBDVHS, and amended the agreement in August 2019 to include THCVHS.

For all of our future product candidates, we aim to identify and qualify manufacturers to provide the API and fill-and-finish services prior to submission of an NDA to the FDA. We expect to continue to develop drug candidates that can be produced cost-effectively at contract manufacturing facilities.

Intellectual Property

The success of most of our product candidates will depend in large part on our ability to:

- obtain and maintain patent and other legal protections for the proprietary technology, inventions and improvements we consider important to our business;
- prosecute our patent applications and defend any issued patents we obtain;
- preserve the confidentiality of our trade secrets; and
- operate without infringing the patents and proprietary rights of third parties.

We intend to continue to seek appropriate patent protection for certain of our product candidates, drug delivery systems, molecular modifications, as well as other proprietary technologies and their uses by filing patent applications in the United States and other selected global territories. We intend for these patent applications to cover, where possible, claims for medical uses, processes for isolation and preparation, processes for delivery and formulations.

As of the date of this prospectus, we have licensed from UM two U.S. patents as well as foreign counterparts in the United Kingdom, European Union, Japan, Hong Kong, Canada and Australia. The patents that we license cover composition of matter and preparation of delta-9 THC amino acid esters and their methods of use. These patents are expected to expire in 2034. Under our license agreements, UM retains ownership over the licensed patents and control over the maintenance and prosecution of the licensed patents and patent applications. We also rely upon unpatented trade secrets and know-how and continuing technological innovation to develop and maintain our proprietary and intellectual property position. We seek to protect our proprietary information, in part, using confidentiality agreements with our collaborators, scientific advisors, employees and consultants, and invention assignment agreements with our employees and selected consultants, scientific advisors and collaborators. The confidentiality agreements are designed to protect our proprietary information and, in the case of agreements or clauses requiring invention assignment, to grant us ownership of technologies that are developed through a relationship with a third-party.

Competition

Our industry is characterized by rapidly advancing technologies, intense competition and a strong emphasis on proprietary products. We face potential competition from many different sources, such as pharmaceutical companies, including generic drug companies, biotechnology companies, drug delivery companies and academic and research institutions. Many of our potential competitors have substantially greater financial, scientific, technical, intellectual property, regulatory and human resources than we do, and greater experience than we do commercializing products and developing product candidates, including obtaining FDA and other regulatory approvals for product candidates. Consequently, our competitors may develop products for indications we pursue that are more effective, better tolerated, more widely-prescribed or accepted, more useful and less costly, and they may also be more successful in manufacturing and marketing their products. We also face competition from third parties in recruiting and retaining qualified personnel, establishing clinical trial sites and enrolling patients for clinical trials and in identifying and acquiring or in-licensing new products and product candidates.

Government Regulation

Government authorities in the United States, at the federal, state and local level, and in other countries, extensively regulate, among other things, the research, development, testing, manufacture, packaging, storage, recordkeeping, labeling, advertising, promotion, distribution, marketing, import and export of pharmaceutical products such as those we are developing. The processes for obtaining regulatory approvals in the United States and in foreign countries, along with subsequent compliance with applicable statutes and regulations, require the expenditure of substantial time and financial resources. A failure to comply with such laws and regulations or prevail in any enforcement action or litigation related to noncompliance could have a material adverse impact on our business, financial condition and results of operations and could cause the market value of our common stock to decline.

[Table of Contents](#)

Regulation of Cannabis and Cannabinoids

DEA Regulation

Cannabis, cannabis extracts and some cannabinoids are regulated as “controlled substances” as defined in the Controlled Substances Act (the “CSA”), which establishes registration, security, recordkeeping, reporting, storage, distribution and other requirements administered by the DEA. The DEA is concerned with the control of handlers of controlled substances, and with the equipment and raw materials used in their manufacture and packaging, in order to prevent loss and diversion into illicit channels of commerce.

The DEA regulates controlled substances as Schedule I, II, III, IV or V substances. Schedule I substances by definition have no established medicinal use and may not be marketed or sold in the United States. A pharmaceutical product may be listed as Schedule II, III, IV or V, with Schedule II substances considered to present the highest risk of abuse and Schedule V substances the lowest relative risk of abuse among such substances. Cannabis, cannabis extracts and some cannabinoids are listed by the DEA as Schedule I controlled substances under the CSA. Consequently, their manufacture, shipment, storage, sale and use are subject to a high degree of regulation. Annual registration is required for any facility that manufactures, distributes, dispenses, imports or exports any controlled substance. The registration is specific to the particular location, activity and controlled substance schedule. For example, separate registrations are needed for import and manufacturing, and each registration will specify which schedules of controlled substances are authorized.

The DEA typically inspects a facility to review its security measures prior to issuing a registration. Security requirements vary by controlled substance schedule, with the most stringent requirements applying to Schedule I and Schedule II substances. Required security measures include background checks on employees and physical control of inventory through measures such as cages, surveillance cameras and inventory reconciliations. The registered entity must maintain records for the handling of all controlled substances and must make periodic reports to the DEA. These include, for example, distribution reports for Schedule I and II controlled substances, Schedule III substances that are narcotics, and other designated substances. The registered entity must also report thefts or losses of any controlled substance and obtain authorization to destroy any controlled substance. In addition, special authorization and notification requirements apply to imports and exports.

In addition, a DEA quota system controls and limits the availability and production of controlled substances in Schedule I or II. Distributions of any Schedule I or II controlled substance must also be accompanied by special order forms, with copies provided to the DEA. The DEA may adjust aggregate production quotas and individual production and procurement quotas from time to time during the year, although the DEA has substantial discretion in whether or not to make such adjustments. To meet its responsibilities, the DEA conducts periodic inspections of registered establishments that handle controlled substances. In the event of non-compliance, the DEA may seek civil penalties, refuse to renew necessary registrations, or initiate proceedings to revoke those registrations. In certain circumstances, violations could lead to criminal prosecution.

The DEA has conducted a scientific review of the chemical structure of CBDVHS and determined that CBDVHS is not a regulated chemical nor controlled substance under the CSA. This decision by the DEA may help the Company expand the network of clinical testing sites, permit a greater cross-section of patients to participate in studies of this drug, as well as speed the initiation of clinical trials. THCVHS remains a Schedule I, controlled substance, pending a request to re-schedule after completion of pivotal clinical trials resulting in a drug approval by the FDA.

State Regulation

The states also maintain separate controlled substance laws and regulations, including licensing, recordkeeping, security, distribution, and dispensing requirements. State authorities, including Boards of Pharmacy, regulate use of controlled substances in each state. Failure to maintain compliance with applicable requirements, particularly as manifested in the loss or diversion of controlled substances, can result in enforcement action that could have a material adverse effect on our business, operations and financial condition.

The Single Convention on Narcotic Drugs 1961

Many countries, including the United States, are parties to the 1961 Single Convention on Narcotic Drugs (the “Single Convention”), which is an international treaty that governs international trade and domestic control of narcotic substances, including cannabis and cannabis extracts. The Single Convention requires all parties to take measures to limit the production, manufacture, export, import, distribution of, trade in, and use and possession of

cannabis exclusively to medical and scientific purposes. In particular, the Single Convention requires member countries to establish a government agency to oversee the cultivation of marijuana and establish a monopoly on the wholesale trade of marijuana, and it provides that this role must be filled by a single government agency if the member country's constitution so permits.

[Table of Contents](#)

Party members, including the United States, may interpret and implement their treaty obligations in a way that restricts our ability to develop and obtain marketing approval for our product candidates in accordance with our current plans and partnership with UM.

Pursuant to the Single Convention, NIDA oversees the cultivation of research-grade cannabis for medicinal research on behalf of the United States Government. NIDA has historically fulfilled this obligation through a contract that it administers with UM. UM has been the sole NIDA contractor to grow cannabis for research purposes since 1968. The contract is open for competitive bidding at periodic intervals. Since 1999, the term of the contract has been five years. UM engaged in a competitive bidding process for the next contract interval and was awarded the contract in 2015. Under the NIDA contract, UM grows, harvests, stores, ships and analyzes cannabis of different varieties, as NIDA requires. In August 2016 the DEA announced that it would consider granting registrations for the cultivation of cannabis for research and development purposes outside of the NIDA contract process. We are not aware of any entity that has received such a registration under this process to date.

UM has represented that it also grows cannabis for purposes of researching cannabis extracts, and has in the past grown cannabis, purified cannabis extracts, and distributed extracts for purposes of developing product candidates, separate and apart from its contract with NIDA. UM has indicated that it conducted these activities pursuant to separate registrations from the DEA and that it plans to seek the necessary additional DEA registrations to conduct the contemplated activities in connection with our partnership, in compliance with applicable law and the United States' obligations under the Single Convention. However, there is a risk that regulatory authorities may disagree and decline to authorize UM to engage in these activities.

U.S. Food and Drug Administration

In the United States, pharmaceutical products are subject to extensive regulation by the FDA. The FDA regulates drugs under the FDCA and its implementing regulations. The process of obtaining regulatory approvals and the subsequent compliance with appropriate federal, state, local and foreign statutes and regulations requires the expenditure of substantial time and financial resources. Failure to comply with the applicable U.S. requirements at any time during the product development process, approval process or after approval, may subject us to a variety of administrative or judicial sanctions, such as the FDA's refusal to approve pending NDAs, withdrawal of an approval, imposition of a clinical hold, issuance of warning letters, product recalls, product seizures, total or partial suspension of production or distribution, injunctions, fines, refusals of government contracts, restitution, disgorgement or civil or criminal penalties.

The process required by the FDA before a drug may be marketed in the United States generally involves the following:

- completion of preclinical laboratory tests, animal studies and formulation studies in compliance with good laboratory practice ("GLP") regulations;
- submission to the FDA of an IND, which must become effective before human clinical trials may begin;
- approval by an institutional review board ("IRB") at each clinical site before each trial may be initiated;
- performance of adequate and well-controlled human clinical trials in accordance with good clinical practice ("GCP") requirements to establish the safety and efficacy of the proposed drug for each indication;
- submission of a NDA to the FDA;
- satisfactory completion of an FDA inspection of the manufacturing facility or facilities at which the product is produced to assess compliance with cGMP requirements and to assure that the facilities, methods and controls are adequate to preserve the drug's identity, strength, quality and purity; and
- FDA review and approval of the NDA.

[Table of Contents](#)

Preclinical Studies

Preclinical studies include laboratory evaluation of product chemistry, toxicity and formulation, as well as animal studies to assess potential safety and efficacy. An IND sponsor must submit the results of the preclinical tests, together with manufacturing information, analytical data and any available clinical data or literature, among other things, to the FDA as part of an IND. Some preclinical testing may continue even after the IND is submitted. An IND automatically becomes effective 30 days after receipt by the FDA unless, before that time, the FDA raises concerns or questions related to one or more proposed clinical trials and places the clinical trial on a clinical hold. In such a case, the IND sponsor and the FDA must resolve any outstanding concerns before the clinical trial can begin. As a result, submission of an IND may not result in the FDA allowing clinical trials to commence.

Clinical Trials

Clinical trials involve the administration of the investigational new drug to human subjects under the supervision of qualified investigators in accordance with GCP requirements, which include the requirement that all research subjects provide their informed consent in writing for their participation in any clinical trial. Clinical trials are conducted under protocols detailing, among other things, the objectives of the trial, the parameters to be used in monitoring safety, and the effectiveness criteria to be evaluated. A protocol for each clinical trial and any subsequent protocol amendments must be submitted to the FDA as part of the IND. In addition, an IRB at each institution participating in the clinical trial must review and approve the plan for any clinical trial before it commences at that institution. Information about certain clinical trials must be submitted within specific timeframes to the NIH for public dissemination on their www.clinicaltrials.gov website.

Human clinical trials are typically conducted in three sequential phases, which may overlap or be combined:

- Phase 1: The drug is initially introduced into healthy human subjects or patients with the target disease or condition and tested for safety, dosage tolerance, absorption, metabolism, distribution, excretion and, if possible, to gain an early indication of its effectiveness.
- Phase 2: The drug is administered to a limited patient population to identify possible adverse effects and safety risks, to preliminarily evaluate the efficacy of the product for specific targeted diseases and to determine dosage tolerance and optimal dosage.
- Phase 3: The drug is administered to an expanded patient population, generally at geographically dispersed clinical trial sites, in well-controlled clinical trials to generate enough data to statistically evaluate the efficacy and safety of the product for approval, to establish the overall risk-benefit profile of the product, and to provide adequate information for the labeling of the product.

Progress reports detailing the results of the clinical trials must be submitted at least annually to the FDA and more frequently if serious adverse events occur. Phase 1, Phase 2 and Phase 3 clinical trials may not be completed successfully within any specified period, or at all. Furthermore, the FDA or the sponsor may suspend or terminate a clinical trial at any time on various grounds, including a finding that the research subjects are being exposed to an unacceptable health risk. Similarly, an IRB can suspend or terminate approval of a clinical trial at its institution if the clinical trial is not being conducted in accordance with the IRB's requirements or if the drug has been associated with unexpected serious harm to patients.

Marketing Approval

Assuming successful completion of the required clinical testing, the results of the preclinical and clinical studies, together with detailed information relating to the product's chemistry, manufacture, controls and proposed labeling, among other things, are submitted to the FDA as part of a NDA requesting approval to market the product for one or more indications. In most cases, the submission of a NDA is subject to a substantial application user fee. Under the Prescription Drug User Fee Act ("PDUFA") guidelines that are currently in effect, the FDA has a goal of ten months from the date of "filing" of a standard NDA for a new molecular entity to review and act on the submission. This review typically takes at least twelve months from the date the NDA is submitted to the FDA because the FDA has approximately two months to make a "filing" decision. However, if issues arise during the

review, the FDA may request additional information and the review period may be extended to permit the applicant to provide and the FDA to review that information, which may significantly extend this time period.

[Table of Contents](#)

In addition, under the Pediatric Research Equity Act of 2003 (“PREA”), as amended and reauthorized, certain NDAs or supplements to a NDA must contain data that is adequate to assess the safety and effectiveness of the drug for the claimed indications in all relevant pediatric subpopulations, and to

support dosing and administration for each pediatric subpopulation for which the product is safe and effective. The FDA may, on its own initiative or at the request of the applicant, grant deferrals for submission of some or all pediatric data until after approval of the product for use in adults, or full or partial waivers from the pediatric data requirements.

The FDA also may require submission of REMS plan to ensure that the benefits of the drug outweigh its risks. The REMS plan could include medication guides, physician communication plans, assessment plans, and/or elements to assure safe use, such as restricted distribution methods, patient registries, or other risk minimization tools.

The FDA conducts a preliminary review of all NDAs within the first 60 days after submission, before accepting them for filing, to determine whether they are sufficiently complete to permit substantive review. The FDA may request additional information rather than accept a NDA for filing. In this event, the application must be resubmitted with the additional information requested. The resubmitted application is also subject to review before the FDA accepts it for filing. Once the submission is accepted for filing, the FDA begins an in-depth substantive review. The FDA reviews a NDA to determine, among other things, whether the drug is safe and effective and whether the facility in which it is manufactured, processed, packaged or held meets standards designed to assure the product's continued safety, quality and purity.

The FDA may refer an application for a novel drug to an advisory committee. An advisory committee is a panel of independent experts, including clinicians and other scientific experts, that reviews, evaluates and provides a recommendation as to whether the application should be approved and under what conditions. The FDA is not bound by the recommendations of an advisory committee, but it considers such recommendations carefully when making decisions.

Before approving a NDA, the FDA typically will inspect the facility or facilities where the product is manufactured. The FDA will not approve an application unless it determines that the manufacturing processes and facilities are in compliance with cGMP requirements and adequate to assure consistent production of the product within required specifications. Additionally, before approving a NDA, the FDA may inspect one or more clinical trial sites to assure compliance with GCP requirements.

The testing and approval process for a NDA requires substantial time, effort and financial resources, and each may take several years to complete. Data obtained from preclinical and clinical testing are not always conclusive and may be susceptible to varying interpretations, which could delay, limit or prevent regulatory approval. The FDA may not grant approval on a timely basis, or at all.

After evaluating the NDA and all related information, including the advisory committee recommendation, if any, and inspection reports regarding the manufacturing facilities and clinical trial sites, the FDA may issue an approval letter, or, in some cases, a complete response letter. A complete response letter generally contains a statement of specific conditions that must be met in order to secure final approval of the NDA and may require additional clinical or preclinical testing in order for the FDA to reconsider the application. Even with submission of this additional information, the FDA ultimately may decide that the application does not satisfy the regulatory criteria for approval. If and when those conditions have been met to the FDA's satisfaction, the FDA will typically issue an approval letter. An approval letter authorizes commercial marketing of the drug with specific prescribing information for specific indications. For some products, such as our product candidates, an additional step of DEA review and scheduling is required.

[Table of Contents](#)

Post-Approval Requirements

Drugs manufactured or distributed pursuant to FDA approvals are subject to pervasive and continuing regulation by the FDA, including, among other things, requirements relating to recordkeeping, periodic reporting, product sampling and distribution, advertising and promotion and reporting of adverse experiences with the product. After approval, most changes to the approved product, such as adding new indications or other labeling claims are subject to prior FDA review and approval. There also are continuing, annual user fee requirements for any marketed products and the establishments at which such products are manufactured, as well as new application fees for supplemental applications with clinical data.

The FDA may impose a number of post-approval requirements as a condition of approval of a NDA. For example, the FDA may require post-marketing testing, including Phase 4 clinical trials, and surveillance to further assess and monitor the product's safety and effectiveness after commercialization.

In addition, drug manufacturers and other entities involved in the manufacture and distribution of approved drugs are required to register their establishments with the FDA and state agencies and are subject to periodic unannounced inspections by the FDA and these state agencies for compliance with cGMP requirements. Changes to the manufacturing process are strictly regulated and often require prior FDA approval before being implemented. FDA regulations also require investigation and correction of any deviations from cGMP requirements and impose reporting and documentation requirements upon the sponsor and any third-party manufacturers that the sponsor may decide to use. Accordingly, manufacturers must continue to expend time, money, and effort in the area of production and quality control to maintain cGMP compliance.

Once an approval is granted, the FDA may withdraw the approval if compliance with regulatory requirements and standards is not maintained or if problems occur after the product reaches the market.

Later discovery of previously unknown problems with a product, including adverse events of unanticipated severity or frequency, or with manufacturing processes, or failure to comply with regulatory requirements, may result in mandatory revisions to the approved labeling to add new safety information; imposition of post-market studies or clinical trials to assess new safety risks; or imposition of distribution or other restrictions under a REMS program.

Other potential consequences include, among other things:

- restrictions on the marketing or manufacturing of the product, complete withdrawal of the product from the market or product recalls;
- fines, warning letters or holds on post-approval clinical trials;
- refusal of the FDA to approve pending NDAs or supplements to approved NDAs, or suspension or revocation of product license approvals;
- product seizure or detention, or refusal to permit the import or export of products; or
- injunctions or the imposition of civil or criminal penalties.

The FDA strictly regulates marketing, labeling, advertising and promotion of products that are placed on the market. Drugs may be promoted only for the approved indications and in accordance with the provisions of the approved label. The FDA and other agencies actively enforce the laws and regulations prohibiting the promotion of off-label uses, and a company that is found to have improperly promoted off-label uses may be subject to significant liability.

In addition, the distribution of prescription pharmaceutical products is subject to the Prescription Drug Marketing Act ("PDMA"), which regulates the distribution of drugs and drug samples at the federal level and sets minimum standards for the registration and regulation of drug distributors by the states. Both the PDMA and state laws limit the distribution of prescription pharmaceutical product samples and impose requirements to ensure accountability in distribution.

[Table of Contents](#)

Exclusivity and Approval of Competing Products

Hatch Waxman Act

Section 505 of the FDCA describes three types of marketing applications that may be submitted to the FDA to request marketing authorization for a new drug. A Section 505(b)(1) NDA is an application that contains full reports of investigations of safety and efficacy. A 505(b)(2) NDA is an application that contains full reports of investigations of safety and efficacy but where at least some of the information required for approval comes from investigations that were not conducted by or for the applicant and for which the applicant has not obtained a right of reference or use from the person by or for whom the investigations were conducted. This regulatory pathway enables the applicant to rely, in part, on the FDA's prior findings of safety and efficacy for an existing product, or published literature, in support of its application. Section 505(j) establishes an abbreviated approval process for a generic version of

approved drug products through the submission of an Abbreviated New Drug Application (“ANDA”). An ANDA provides for marketing of a generic drug product that has the same active ingredients, dosage form, strength, route of administration, labeling, performance characteristics and intended use, among other things, to a previously approved product. ANDAs are termed “abbreviated” because they are generally not required to include preclinical (animal) and clinical (human) data to establish safety and efficacy. Instead, generic applicants must scientifically demonstrate that their product is bioequivalent to, or performs in the same manner as, the innovator drug through in vitro, in vivo, or other testing. The generic version must deliver the same amount of active ingredients into a subject’s bloodstream in the same amount of time as the innovator drug and can often be substituted by pharmacists under prescriptions written for the reference listed drug.

Hatch Waxman Patent Exclusivity

In seeking approval for a drug through a NDA, applicants are required to list with the FDA each patent with claims that cover the applicant’s product or a method of using the product. Upon approval of a drug, each of the patents listed in the application for the drug is then published in the FDA’s Approved Drug Products with Therapeutic Equivalence Evaluations, commonly known as the Orange Book. Drugs listed in the Orange Book can, in turn, be cited by potential competitors in support of approval of an ANDA or 505(b)(2) NDA.

The ANDA or 505(b)(2) NDA applicant is required to certify to the FDA concerning any patents listed for the approved product in the FDA’s Orange Book, except for patents covering methods of use for which the ANDA applicant is not seeking approval. Specifically, the applicant must certify with respect to each patent that:

- the required patent information has not been filed;
- the listed patent has expired;
- the listed patent has not expired, but will expire on a particular date and approval is sought after patent expiration; or
- the listed patent is invalid, unenforceable or will not be infringed by the new product.

Generally, the ANDA or 505(b)(2) NDA cannot be approved until all listed patents have expired, except when the ANDA or 505(b)(2) NDA applicant challenges a listed drug. A certification that the proposed product will not infringe the already approved product’s listed patents or that such patents are invalid or unenforceable is called a Paragraph IV certification. If the applicant does not challenge the listed patents or indicate that it is not seeking approval of a patented method of use, the ANDA or 505(b)(2) NDA application will not be approved until all the listed patents claiming the referenced product have expired.

If the ANDA or 505(b)(2) NDA applicant has provided a Paragraph IV certification to the FDA, the applicant must also send notice of the Paragraph IV certification to the NDA and patent holders once the application has been accepted for filing by the FDA. The NDA and patent holders may then initiate a patent infringement lawsuit in response to the notice of the Paragraph IV certification. The filing of a patent infringement lawsuit within 45 days after the receipt of notice of the Paragraph IV certification automatically prevents the FDA from approving the ANDA or 505(b)(2) NDA until the earlier of 30 months, expiration of the patent, settlement of the lawsuit or a decision in the infringement case that is favorable to the ANDA applicant.

[Table of Contents](#)

Hatch Waxman Non-Patent Exclusivity

In addition to patent issues, market and data exclusivity provisions under the FDCA can delay the submission or the approval of certain applications for competing products. The FDCA provides a five-year period of non-patent data exclusivity within the United States to the first applicant to gain approval of a NDA for a new chemical entity. A drug is a new chemical entity if the FDA has not previously approved any other new drug containing the same active moiety, which is the molecule or ion responsible for the activity of the drug substance. During the exclusivity period, the FDA may not accept for review an ANDA or a 505(b)(2) NDA submitted by another company that references the previously approved drug. However, an ANDA or 505(b)(2) NDA may be submitted after four years if it contains a Paragraph IV certification of patent invalidity or non-infringement. The FDCA also provides three years of marketing exclusivity for a NDA, 505(b)(2) NDA, or supplement to an existing NDA or 505(b)(2) NDA if new clinical investigations, other than bioavailability studies, that were conducted or sponsored by the applicant, are deemed by the FDA to be essential to the approval of the application or supplement. Three-year exclusivity may be awarded for changes to a previously approved drug product, such as new indications, dosages, strengths or dosage forms of an existing drug.

This three-year exclusivity covers only the conditions of use associated with the new clinical investigations and, as a general matter, does not prohibit the FDA from approving ANDAs or 505(b)(2) NDAs for other versions of a drug. Five-year and three-year exclusivity will not delay the submission or approval of a full NDA; however, an applicant submitting a full NDA would be required to conduct or obtain a right of reference to all of the preclinical studies and adequate and well-controlled clinical trials necessary to demonstrate safety and effectiveness.

Orphan Drug Designation and Exclusivity

Under the Orphan Drug Act, the FDA may designate a product as an orphan drug if it is a drug intended to treat a disease or condition that affects populations of fewer than 200,000 individuals in the United States or, if it affects more than 200,000 individuals in the United States, there is no reasonable expectation that the cost of developing and making a drug product available in the United States for this type of disease or condition will be recovered from sales of the product. Orphan designation must be requested before submitting a NDA. Orphan designation does not convey any advantage in or shorten the duration of the regulatory review and approval process.

If a product that has orphan designation subsequently receives the first FDA approval for the disease or condition for which it has such designation, the product is entitled to orphan drug exclusivity, which means that the FDA may not approve any other applications to market the same drug for the same indication for seven years, except in limited circumstances, such as a showing of clinical superiority to the product with orphan exclusivity or inability to manufacture the product in sufficient quantities. The designation of such drug also entitles a party to financial incentives such as opportunities for grant funding towards clinical trial costs, tax advantages and user-fee waivers. Competitors, however, may receive approval of different products for the same indication for which the orphan product has exclusivity or obtain approval for the same product but for a different indication than that for which the orphan product has exclusivity.

Federal and State Fraud and Abuse and Data Privacy and Security Laws and Regulations

In addition to FDA restrictions on marketing of pharmaceutical products, federal and state fraud and abuse laws restrict business practices in the pharmaceutical industry. These laws include anti-kickback and false claims laws and regulations as well as data privacy and security laws and regulations.

The federal Anti-Kickback Statute prohibits, among other things, knowingly and willfully offering, paying, soliciting or receiving remuneration to induce or in return for purchasing, leasing, ordering, or arranging for or recommending the purchase, lease, or order of any item or service reimbursable under Medicare, Medicaid or other federal healthcare programs. The term "remuneration" has been broadly interpreted to include anything of value. The Anti-Kickback Statute has been interpreted to apply to arrangements between pharmaceutical manufacturers on one hand and prescribers, purchasers, and formulary managers on the other. Although there are a number of statutory exceptions and regulatory safe harbors protecting some common activities from prosecution, the exemptions and safe harbors are drawn narrowly. Practices that involve remuneration that may be alleged to be intended to induce prescribing, purchases, or recommendations may be subject to scrutiny if they do not meet the requirements of a statutory or regulatory exception or safe harbor. Several courts have interpreted the statute's intent requirement to mean that if any one purpose of an arrangement involving remuneration is to induce referrals of federal healthcare covered business, the statute has been violated. In addition, a person or entity does not need to have actual knowledge of the statute or specific intent to violate it in order to have committed a violation.

[Table of Contents](#)

The federal False Claims Act prohibits any person from knowingly presenting, or causing to be presented, a false claim for payment to the federal government or knowingly making, using, or causing to be made or used a false record or statement material to a false or fraudulent claim to the federal government. A claim includes “any request or demand” for money or property presented to the U.S. government. A violation of the federal Anti-Kickback Statute also constitutes a false or fraudulent claim for purposes of the civil False Claims Act.

Several pharmaceutical and other healthcare companies have been prosecuted under these laws for allegedly providing free product to customers with the expectation that the customers would bill federal programs for the product. Other companies have been prosecuted for causing false claims to be submitted because of the companies’ marketing of products for unapproved, and thus non-covered, uses. In addition, many states have similar fraud and abuse statutes or regulations that apply to items and services reimbursed under Medicaid and other state programs, or, in several states, apply regardless of the payor.

The federal HIPAA also created federal criminal statutes that prohibit knowingly and willfully executing a scheme to defraud any healthcare benefit program, including private third party payors and knowingly and willfully falsifying, concealing or covering up a material fact or making any materially false, fictitious or fraudulent statement in connection with the delivery of or payment for healthcare benefits, items or services. Similar to the Anti-Kickback Statute, a person or entity does not need to have actual knowledge of the statute or specific intent to violate it in order to have committed a violation.

Pharmaceutical companies are also subject to the civil monetary penalties statute, which imposes penalties against any person who is determined to have presented or caused to be presented a claim to a federal health program that the person knows or should know is for an item or service that was not provided as claimed or is false or fraudulent.

In addition, there has been a recent trend of increased federal and state regulation of payments made to physicians and other health care providers. The Patient Protection and Affordable Care Act, as amended by the ACA, signed into law on March 2010, created new federal requirements for reporting, by applicable manufacturers of covered drugs, payments and other transfers of value to physicians and teaching hospitals. Applicable manufacturers are also required to report annually to the government certain ownership and investment interests held by physicians and their immediate family members. In addition, certain states require implementation of commercial compliance programs and compliance with the pharmaceutical industry's voluntary compliance guidelines and the relevant compliance guidance promulgated by the federal government, impose restrictions on marketing practices, and/or tracking and reporting of gifts, compensation and other remuneration or items of value provided to physicians and other health care professionals and entities.

We may also be subject to data privacy and security regulation by both the federal government and the states in which we conduct our business. HIPAA, as amended by the Health Information Technology and Clinical Health Act ("HITECH") and its implementing regulations, imposes specified requirements relating to the privacy, security and transmission of individually identifiable health information. Among other things, HITECH makes HIPAA's privacy and security standards directly applicable to "business associates," defined as independent contractors or agents of covered entities that receive or obtain protected health information in connection with providing a service on behalf of a covered entity. HITECH also increased the civil and criminal penalties that may be imposed against covered entities, business associates and possibly other persons, and gave state attorneys general new authority to file civil actions for damages or injunctions in federal courts to enforce the federal HIPAA laws and seek attorney's fees and costs associated with pursuing federal civil actions. In addition, state laws govern the privacy and security of health information in certain circumstances, many of which differ from each other in significant ways and may not have the same requirements, thus complicating compliance efforts.

To the extent that any of our product candidates, once approved, are sold in a foreign country, we may be subject to similar foreign laws and regulations, which may include, for instance, applicable post-marketing requirements, including safety surveillance, anti-fraud and abuse laws, and implementation of corporate compliance programs and reporting of payments or other transfers of value to healthcare professionals.

[Table of Contents](#)

The shifting commercial compliance environment and the need to build and maintain robust systems to comply with different compliance and/or reporting requirements in multiple jurisdictions increase the possibility that a healthcare company may violate one or more of the requirements. If our operations are found to be in violation of any of such laws or any other governmental regulations that apply to us, we may be subject to penalties, including, without limitation, civil and criminal penalties, damages, fines, the curtailment or restructuring of our operations, exclusion from participation in federal and state healthcare programs and imprisonment, any of which could adversely affect our ability to operate our business and our financial results.

Coverage and Reimbursement

Significant uncertainty exists as to the coverage and reimbursement status of any drug products for which we obtain regulatory approval. In the United States and markets in other countries, sales of any products for which we receive regulatory approval for commercial sale will depend, in part, on the availability of coverage and reimbursement from third-party payors. Third-party payors include government authorities, managed care providers, private health insurers and other organizations. The process for determining whether a payor will provide coverage for a drug product may be separate from the process for setting the reimbursement rate that the payor will pay for the drug product. Third-party payors may limit coverage to specific drug products on an approved list, or formulary, which might not include all of the FDA-approved drugs for a particular indication. A decision by a third-party payor not to cover our products, if approved, could reduce physician utilization of our products once approved and have a material adverse effect on our sales, results of operations and financial condition. Moreover, a payor's decision to provide coverage for a drug product does not imply that an adequate reimbursement rate will be approved. Adequate third-party reimbursement may not be available to enable us to maintain price levels sufficient to realize an appropriate return on our investment in product development.

In addition, the U.S. government, state legislatures and foreign governments have continued implementing cost-containment programs, including price controls, restrictions on coverage and reimbursement and requirements for substitution of generic products. By way of example, in the United States, the ACA contains provisions that may reduce the profitability of drug products, including, for example, increased rebates for drugs sold to Medicaid programs, extension of Medicaid rebates to Medicaid managed care plans, mandatory discounts for certain Medicare Part D beneficiaries, and annual fees based on pharmaceutical companies' share of sales to federal health care programs. In addition, recently there has been heightened governmental scrutiny over the manner in which manufacturers set prices for their marketed products, which has resulted in several Congressional inquiries and proposed bills designed to, among other things, reform government program reimbursement methodologies. We expect that additional state and federal healthcare reform measures will be adopted in the future, any of which could limit the amounts that federal and state governments will pay for healthcare products and services, which could result in reduced demand for our products once approved or additional pricing pressures.

We expect that the Trump administration will continue to seek to modify, repeal, or otherwise invalidate all, or certain provisions of, the ACA. In January 2017, the House and Senate passed a budget resolution that authorizes congressional committees to draft legislation to repeal all or portions of the ACA and permits such legislation to pass with a majority vote in the Senate. President Trump has also recently issued an executive order in which he stated that

it is his administration's policy to seek the prompt repeal of the ACA and directed executive departments and federal agencies to waive, defer, grant exemptions from, or delay the implementation of the burdensome provisions of the ACA to the maximum extent permitted by law. There is still uncertainty with respect to the impact President Trump's administration and the U.S. Congress may have, if any, and any changes will likely take time to unfold, and could have an impact on coverage and reimbursement for healthcare items and services covered by plans that were authorized by the ACA. As such, we cannot predict what effect the ACA or other healthcare reform initiatives that may be adopted in the future will have on our business.

Foreign Regulation

In order to market any product outside of the United States, we must comply with numerous and varying regulatory requirements of other countries regarding safety and efficacy and governing, among other things, clinical trials and commercial sales and distribution of our products. While our management and many of our consultants are familiar with and have been responsible for gaining marketing approval in many countries, we have not reviewed the specific regulations in countries outside of the United States, as it pertains to cannabinoids.

[Table of Contents](#)

Additional Regulation

We are a reporting company with the Securities and Exchange Commission (the “SEC”), and, therefore, subject to the information and reporting requirements of the Exchange Act of 1934, as amended (the “Exchange Act”) and other federal securities laws, and the compliance obligations of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002 (“Sarbanes-Oxley Act”). In addition, our financial reporting is subject to United States generally accepted accounting principles (“U.S. GAAP”), and U.S. GAAP is subject to change over time.

We are also subject to federal, state and local laws and regulations applied to businesses generally. We believe that we are in conformity with all applicable laws in all relevant jurisdictions.

Employees

As of the date of this prospectus, we have a total of four full-time employees, two of whom have an M.D. degree. None of our employees are represented by a labor union or covered by a collective bargaining agreement. We have not experienced any work stoppages and we consider our relations with our employees to be good.

We anticipate that we will need to hire approximately four additional employees or independent contractors for our continued development efforts. We also intend to utilize independent contractors and outsourced services, such as CRO's, and third-party manufacturers, where possible and appropriate.

Website

Our Internet website, which is located at <http://emeraldbio.life>, describes our company and our management and provides information about cannabis-based therapeutics. Information contained on our website is not incorporated by reference into, and should not be considered a part of, this prospectus.

DESCRIPTION OF PROPERTY

Principal Offices

Our principal executive offices and corporate offices are located at 130 North Marina Drive, Long Beach, CA 90803.

Our laboratory and office space previously consisted of approximately 3,415 square feet located at the Innovation Hub, Insight Park on the UM campus. Our lease expired on December 31, 2017 and our annual rent was approximately \$111,000, payable in equal monthly installments with annual escalations. Upon expiration, the Company did not renew the laboratory lease. The Company has retained office space in Long Beach, California under lease agreement at the rate of \$2,609 per month and in Oxford, Mississippi at the rate of \$300 per month.

LEGAL PROCEEDINGS

On May 3, 2017, the Company entered into a securities purchase agreement with a purchaser to sell 1,000,000 shares of a new Series E Preferred Stock, par value \$0.001 per share, at a purchase price of \$20.00 for each preferred share for aggregate gross proceeds of \$20,000,000 (the "Series E Preferred Stock Financing"). The securities purchase agreement provides for no conditions precedent to the close and that closing is not to occur later than July 10, 2017. The purchaser did not provide funding to close the transaction on July 10, 2017 as required under the securities purchase agreement and requested an extension of the closing date. In connection with the signing of the securities purchase agreement, an affiliate of the purchaser entered into a financial guarantee to the benefit of the Company that provided for payment of the purchase price in full within 90 days of exercise. The Company exercised this guarantee on July 12, 2017. The guarantor has failed to pay the \$20,000,000 within 90 days of notice of the purchaser's default, as required by the terms of the guaranty.

[Table of Contents](#)

On November 8, 2017, the Company filed a petition commencing arbitration against the purchaser and guarantor as well as other related individuals. In the petition, the Company asserts, among other things, breach of contract against the purchaser for its failure to close its purchase of Series E Preferred Stock as required by the securities purchase agreement. The Company also asserts a breach of contract claim against the guarantor for its failure to honor its guarantee of the transaction. The petition was filed with Judicial Arbitration and Mediation Services, Inc., ENDISPUTE in Orange County, California, as required by the securities purchase agreement. The Company engaged a legal counsel in the matter on a contingent-fee basis, other than costs, but that firm has subsequently decided to not proceed with the case. The Company is currently assessing its intent to continue to pursue damages and remedies in connection with these agreements.

MARKET FOR COMMON EQUITY AND RELATED STOCKHOLDER MATTERS

Market Information. Our common stock has been quoted on the OTCQB, under the symbol “EMBI”. Previously, it traded under the symbol “NMUS” until March 25, 2019. There can be infrequent trading volume, which precipitates wide spreads in the “bid” and “ask” quotes of our common stock, on any given day. On November 11, 2019, the last reported sale price of our common stock on the OTCQB was \$0.27 per share.

The following table sets forth, for the quarters indicated, the high and low bid prices per share of our common stock on the OTCQB, reported by the Financial Industry Regulatory Authority Composite Feed or other qualified interdealer quotation medium. Such quotations reflect inter-dealer prices, without retail mark-up, mark-down or commission, and may not represent actual transactions.

Quarter Ended	High	Low
October 1, 2019 through November 11, 2019	\$ 0.49	\$ 0.27
September 30, 2019	\$ 0.45	\$ 0.25
June 30, 2019	\$ 1.17	\$ 0.28
March 31, 2019	\$ 0.90	\$ 0.30
December 31, 2018	\$ 0.60	\$ 0.05
September 30, 2018	\$ 0.39	\$ 0.18
June 30, 2018	\$ 0.34	\$ 0.22
March 31, 2018	\$ 0.48	\$ 0.14
December 31, 2017	\$ 0.30	\$ 0.10
September 30, 2017	\$ 0.32	\$ 0.23
June 30, 2017	\$ 0.38	\$ 0.25
March 31, 2017	\$ 0.50	\$ 0.24

Holders. As of November 11, 2019, there were approximately 59 stockholders of record. The number of stockholders of record does not include

beneficial owners of our common stock, whose shares are held in the names of various dealers, clearing agencies, banks, brokers and other fiduciaries.

Dividends. We have never declared or paid a cash dividend on our common stock. We do not expect to pay cash dividends on our common stock in the foreseeable future. We currently intend to retain our earnings, if any, for use in our business. Any dividends declared in the future will be at the discretion of our Board and subject to any restrictions that may be imposed by our lenders.

Penny Stock Regulation. Shares of our common stock will probably be subject to rules adopted by the SEC that regulate broker-dealer practices in connection with transactions in “penny stocks.” Penny stocks are generally equity securities with a price of less than \$5.00 (other than securities registered on certain national securities exchanges or quoted on the NASDAQ system, provided that current price and volume information with respect to transactions in those securities is provided by the exchange or system). The penny stock rules require a broker-dealer, prior to a transaction in a penny stock not otherwise exempt from those rules, deliver a standardized risk disclosure document prepared by the SEC, which contains the following:

- a description of the nature and level of risk in the market for penny stocks in both public offerings and secondary trading;
- a description of the broker’s or dealer’s duties to the customer and of the rights and remedies available to the customer with respect to violation to such duties or other requirements of securities’ laws;
- a brief, clear, narrative description of a dealer market, including “bid” and “ask” prices for penny stocks and the significance of the spread between the “bid” and “ask” price;
- a toll-free telephone number for inquiries on disciplinary actions;
- definitions of significant terms in the disclosure document or in the conduct of trading in penny stocks; and
- such other information and is in such form (including language, type, size and format), as the SEC shall require by rule or regulation.

[Table of Contents](#)

Prior to effecting any transaction in penny stock, the broker-dealer also must provide the customer the following:

- the bid and offer quotations for the penny stock;
- the compensation of the broker-dealer and its salesperson in the transaction;
- the number of shares to which such bid and ask prices apply, or other comparable information relating to the depth and liquidity of the market for such stock; and
- monthly account statements showing the market value of each penny stock held in the customer's account.

In addition, the penny stock rules require that prior to a transaction in a penny stock not otherwise exempt from those rules, the broker-dealer must make a special written determination that the penny stock is a suitable investment for the purchaser and receive the purchaser's written acknowledgment of the receipt of a risk disclosure statement, a written agreement to transactions involving penny stocks, and a signed and dated copy of a written suitability statement. These disclosure requirements may have the effect of reducing the trading activity in the secondary market for a stock that becomes subject to the penny stock rules. Holders of shares of our common stock may have difficulty selling those shares because our common stock will probably be subject to the penny stock rules.

MANAGEMENT'S DISCUSSION AND ANALYSIS OF FINANCIAL CONDITION AND RESULTS OF OPERATIONS

The following discussion and analysis of our financial condition and results of operations should be read in conjunction with our financial statements for the three and six months ended June 30, 2019 and 2018 (unaudited) and our consolidated financial statements for the years ended December 31, 2018 and 2017 together with notes thereto. In addition to historical information, this discussion and analysis contains forward-looking statements that involve

risks, uncertainties and assumptions. Our actual results may differ materially from those anticipated in these forward-looking statements as a result of certain factors, including, but not limited, to those set forth under "Risk Factors" and elsewhere in this prospectus.

Unless otherwise provided in this prospectus, references to "we," "us," "our" and "Emerald Bioscience" in this discussion and analysis refer to Emerald Bioscience, Inc., a Nevada corporation formerly known as Nemus Bioscience, Inc. and Load Guard Logistics, Inc., together with its wholly-owned subsidiaries, Nemus, a California corporation and EMBI Australia Pty Ltd, an Australian proprietary limited company.

Overview

We are a biopharmaceutical company targeting the discovery, development, and the commercialization of cannabinoid-based therapeutics, through a number of license agreements with the University of Mississippi ("UM"). UM holds the only contract to cultivate cannabis for research purposes on behalf of the Federal Government of the United States since 1968, and it has significant expertise in cannabis cultivation and the extraction, separation, process and manufacture of cannabis extracts as well as the chemistry and physiology of cannabinoid molecules. We strive to serve as UM's partner for the development and commercialization of cannabinoid-based therapeutics, and the realization of this partnership will depend on the successful development of these compounds through the regulatory requirements of drug approval agencies, like the FDA in the United States and the EMA in the European Union.

Effective March 25, 2019, we changed the Company's name from Nemus Bioscience, Inc. to Emerald Bioscience, Inc.

In August 2019, the Company formed a new subsidiary in Australia, EMBI Australia Pty Ltd. in order to qualify for the Australian government's research and development tax credit for research and development dollars spent in Australia. The primary purpose of EMBI Australia Pty Ltd. is to conduct clinical trials for our product candidates.

Recent Events and Significant Contracts

Expansion of UM 5050 and UM 8930 Licenses from Ocular Delivery Only to All Fields of Use

On May 24, 2019, we executed two restated and amended license agreements with UM which expanded our use of UM 5050, a pro-drug of tetrahydrocannabinol ("THC"), and UM 8930, an analog of cannabidiol ("CBD"), from ocular delivery only to all fields of use. Pursuant to these license agreements, we have exclusive, perpetual, worldwide licenses related to UM 5050 and UM 8930. Additionally, with the prior written consent of UM, we have the right to sublicense the licensed intellectual property.

Table of Contents

The all fields use for tetrahydrocannabinol-valine-hemisuccinate (“THCVHS”), the proprietary prodrug of THC, is expected to allow the Company to explore related uses for the active moiety of the prodrug, namely THC. Independent *in vitro* and *in vivo* studies have demonstrated the potential use of THC in a variety of potential indications based on the ability of the cannabinoid to act as an anti-inflammatory, anti-fibrotic, and/or inhibitor of neovascularization. The Company has generated data related to these effects using an *ex vivo* human tissue model of the eye. The prodrug technology employed in THCVHS is designed to enhance the bioavailability and pharmacokinetic predictability of the active part of the molecule, once introduced into the body through routes of administration currently being considered by the development team. Given the positive data accumulated to date in studies of the eye, the Company could explore additional central nervous system applications for THCVHS. The Company expects to develop strategic collaborations to identify and advance these applications.

The all fields use of cannabidiol-valine-hemisuccinate (“CBDVHS”), the analog of CBD, is expected to permit the Company to expand research and development into organ systems outside of the current ocular space. Potential disease targets over time could involve the central nervous system, the gastrointestinal tract, the endocrine/metabolic system, reproductive system diseases, or as yet unrecognized opportunities. This bioengineered version of CBD is expected to enlarge the disease target pool by virtue of new routes of administration into the body, thereby enhancing bioavailability. The determination by the DEA that CBDVHS was not a controlled substance permits the Company to enlarge the potential pool of clinical test sites and a more diverse patient pool in the study of disease. The Company expects to develop strategic collaborations to identify and advance these applications.

NB1111

We continue to advance our lead drug candidate, NB1111, towards first-in-human studies to be conducted in both normal controls and patients with glaucoma or ocular hypertension (the “Clinical Trial”). We anticipate launching the Clinical Trial in the second half of 2020 in Australia. During 2019, we achieved various milestones related to the research and development of NB1111, including the following:

- In August 2019, subsequent to the end of the second quarter, EMBI Australia Pty Ltd entered into a start-up agreement with Novotech (Australia) Pty Limited (“Novotech”). The start-up agreement is being entered into in connection with the launch of the Clinical Trial. The Company expects to pay approximately \$65,840 AUD in professional fees and pass through costs in connection with the services provided for in the start-up agreement. Additionally, on September 26, 2019, the EMBI Australia Pty Ltd and Novotech executed a Master Services Agreement and anticipate entering into project agreements covering all anticipated services to be provided by Novotech to the Company in connection with the Clinical Trial.
- In August 2019, subsequent to the end of the second quarter, EMBI Australia Pty Ltd also entered into a master service agreement and initial statement of work with Agilex Biolabs Pty Ltd (“Agilex”) to assist with the assay set up for the anticipated Clinical Trial.

- In August 2019, subsequent to the end of the second quarter, we executed an agreement with Bioscience Laboratories, Inc. to complete Draize testing in advance of the anticipated Clinical Trial.
- AMRI worked toward closing the synthesis validation pathway to manufacture cGMP API of THCVHS with validation of drug product purity. In turn, on April 30, 2019, we entered into an additional agreement with AMRI related to non-GMP synthesis of a demonstration batch of our pro-drug of THC. In August 2019, our manufacturing agreement with AMRI for THCVHS that was executed in July 2018 was replaced by the agreement with Noramco discussed below.
- On August 7, 2019, subsequent to the end of second quarter of 2019, the Company entered into a first amendment to its agreement with Noramco to manufacture THCVHS (the “Noramco Agreement”). CBDVHS was previously being manufactured pursuant to the Noramco Agreement. The Company paid \$257,800 upfront to add the manufacture of THCVHS to the Noramco Agreement and additional payments will be made upon Noramco shipping of the GMP active pharmaceutical ingredient to the Company. All other material terms of the Noramco Agreement remain the same.
- In January 2019, we engaged RRD International, LLC (“RRD”) to provide strategic ophthalmic 505(b)(2) regulatory planning, prepare a Pre-IND meeting briefing book, and schedule and represent us at the Pre-IND meeting with the FDA. In May 2019, we executed a change order to extend our work with RRD as we continue to progress toward a Pre-IND meeting. In August 2019, subsequent to the end of the second quarter, we executed an additional work order with RRD to assist the Company in preparing an investigator’s brochure to support the Clinical Trial.
- UM completed experiments showing that NB1111 was statistically superior in lowering intraocular pressure (“IOP”) compared to the prostaglandin-based therapy, latanoprost, the current standard-of-care for treating glaucoma. Significance was reached across multiple timepoints during a seven-day course of dosing using a validated albino rabbit normotensive ocular model and NB1111 exerted pharmacologic activity consistent with twice-daily dosing.
- Glauconix Biosciences Inc. (“Glauconix”) completed their pilot study to research the mechanism of action and IOP-lowering ability of THC when administered into an *ex vivo* model of a 3D-human trabecular meshwork using both healthy and glaucomatous-derived tissues. The Glauconix study validated the mechanism of action of NB1111 in lowering IOP, a defining disease process of hypertensive glaucoma. Additionally, biomarkers associated with inflammation and fibrosis in both normal and tissues affected by glaucoma were significantly decreased, pointing to anti-inflammatory and anti-fibrotic activities that are often associated with the cannabinoid class of molecules in other disease-states. Additionally, data revealed that biomarkers associated with neovascularization, a disease process of new blood vessel formation that can damage the retina in a variety of ocular diseases, was also inhibited by THC, prompting further study for the utility of this drug in diseases of the retina.
- In January 2019, we executed an agreement with Pharmaceuticals International, Inc. (“PII”) to conduct studies to determine options for producing a sterile dosage form which can be dosed in humans in a clinical study. PII will conduct appropriate formulation studies to determine storage and processing options. Pursuant to the terms of the agreement, the Company paid \$72,500 to initiate the project. After the initial evaluation, the Company has agreed to pay additional fees and expenses upon completion of certain milestones.

[Table of Contents](#)

NB2222

NB2222 is the ocular formulation of our proprietary CBD analog. We have embarked on studies with UM exploring the utility of our drug candidate NB2222 as an eye drop nanoemulsion for the potential treatment and management of several eye diseases, including but not limited to, uveitis, dry eye syndrome, macular degeneration and diabetic retinopathy.

In July 2019, subsequent to the end of the second quarter, the Company engaged Glauconix to research whether CBD or CBDVHS is associated with an increase in IOP and, if so, what the potential mechanism of action would be by exposing the 3D-human trabecular meshwork tissue constructs to these molecules. The Company paid \$69,000 upfront and expects to pay Glauconix an additional \$60,000 upon the completion of this study.

Additionally, in the second quarter of 2019, UM also completed pre-clinical experiments showing that NB2222 exhibited an ability to penetrate multiple chambers of the eye and reach the optic nerve. These findings support the therapeutic potential to provide ocular neuroprotection of retinal ganglion cells, an important goal in treating diseases which lead to vision loss. The data were published in the peer-reviewed Journal of Ocular Pharmacology and Therapeutics in a paper titled, "Analog Derivatization of Cannabidiol for Improved Ocular Permeation" (2019; volume 35 (5): 1-10).

In February 2019, we entered into the Noramco Agreement to provide manufacturing and product development services for the Company's analog formulation of CBD. The Company paid \$146,386 upfront and additional payments will be made upon Noramco shipping of the active pharmaceutical ingredient to the Company.

NB3111

NB3111 is a proprietary cannabinoid cocktail currently undergoing testing as an anti-infective agent against multiple strains of antibiotic resistant bacteria, particularly methicillin-resistant Staphylococcus aureus ("MRSA"). These studies look to examine the utility of cannabinoid-based therapies against a variety of MRSA strains and other gram-positive bacterial infections. We continue to plan to present data from these studies at an upcoming peer-reviewed scientific meeting focused on infectious diseases.

Other Development Programs

The Company continues to plan to work with UM to explore other potential indications and associated routes of administration to expand the UM5050 and UM 8930 licenses. The Company's decision to advance a potential therapeutic candidate will be influenced by a number of criteria, including but not limited to pre-clinical data, synthesis and formulation capability as well as prevailing market conditions.

In July 2019, subsequent to the end of the second quarter, the Company engaged, StemoniX to evaluate CBD and CBDVHS (and possibly additional CBD-derivatives) in a human in vitro neural model with an application to epilepsy. The series of experiments are designed to provide insight into how these cannabinoids stabilize neuronal cells.

Critical Accounting Policy and Estimates

Our Management's Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations section discusses our financial statements, which have been prepared in accordance with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America. The preparation of these financial statements requires management to make estimates and assumptions that affect the reported amounts of assets and liabilities at the date of the financial statements and the reported amounts of income and expenses during the reporting period. On an on-going basis, management evaluates its estimates and judgments, including those related to accrued expenses, financing operations, and contingencies and litigation. Management bases its estimates and judgments on historical experience and on various other factors that are believed to be reasonable under the circumstances, the results of which form the basis for making judgments about the carrying value of assets and liabilities that are not readily apparent from other sources. Actual results may differ from these estimates under different assumptions or conditions. The most significant accounting estimates inherent in the preparation of our financial statements include estimates as to the appropriate carrying value of certain assets and liabilities which are not readily apparent from other sources. We consider certain accounting policies related to fair value measurements, convertible instruments, warrants issued in connection with financings, stock-based compensation expense, and earnings per share to be critical accounting policies that require the use of significant judgments and estimates relating to matters that are inherently uncertain and may result in materially different results under different assumptions and conditions.

Recently Issued and Adopted Accounting Pronouncements

See Note 2 to the accompanying condensed consolidated financial statements included in Part I, Item 1 of this Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q for information on recently issued accounting pronouncements and recently adopted accounting pronouncements. While we expect certain recently adopted accounting pronouncements to impact our estimates in future periods, the impact upon adoption was not significant to our current estimates and operations

Results of Operations

For the three months ended June 30, 2019 and 2018

Revenues. To date, we have not generated any revenues, and do not expect to generate any revenue from the sale of products in the near future.

Operating expenses. For the three months ended June 30, 2019, our total operating expenses were \$1,770,887 as compared to \$1,080,190 for the three months ended June 30, 2018. The increase in operating expenses was due to the items noted below:

Research and development. Research and development expenses for the three months ended June 30, 2019 were \$688,041, which consisted of the upfront payments for the all fields of use licenses for UM 5050 and UM 8930, contract research and development fees paid to UM, regulatory consulting fees paid to RRD, and fees related contract manufacturing paid to AMRI and Noramco. There were no research and development expenses for the three months ended June 30, 2018.

General and administrative. General and administrative expenses for the three months ended June 30, 2019 were \$1,082,846, which primarily consisted of salaries, stock compensation expense, general legal and patent related fees, consulting fees and professional fees related to the Company's capital raising efforts and regulatory filings. By comparison, general and administrative expenses for the three months ended June 30, 2018 were \$1,080,190, which primarily consisted of the same components. General and administrative expenses remained relatively constant period over period.

Other expense (income). For the three months ended June 30, 2019, the Company had other income of \$17,677,777 related primarily to the decrease in fair value of our derivative liabilities by \$17,971,742 which was driven by the decrease in our stock price. We also realized additional interest expense for the three months ended June 30, 2019 as compared to the three months ended June 30, 2018 due to the amortization of the debt discount and interest payments associated with the outstanding balance under the Credit Agreement which was entered during the fourth quarter of 2018.

For the three months ended June 30, 2018, the Company had other expense of \$1,580,168 which consisted of the change in fair value of derivative liabilities driven by an increase in our stock during that period.

Net income (loss) and comprehensive income (loss). For the three months ended June 30, 2019, we had net income of \$15,905,290 as compared to a net loss of \$2,662,000 for the three months ended June 30, 2018. The change from a net loss to net income was primarily attributable to a net increase in other income which was offset by an increase in our research and development expenses. We expect to incur net losses for the foreseeable future.

[Table of Contents](#)

For the six months ended June 30, 2019 and 2018

Research and development. Research and development expenses for the six months ended June 30, 2019 were \$1,009,026, which consisted of the upfront payments for the all fields of use licenses for UM 5050 and UM 8930, the annual license maintenance fee for UM 5070, contract research and development fees paid to UM and Glauconix, regulatory consulting fees paid to RRD, and fees related contract manufacturing paid to AMRI, Noramco and ElSohly Laboratories.

Research and development expenses for the six months ended June 30, 2018 were \$25,000 which consisted of the annual license maintenance fee for UM 5070.

For the six months ended June 30, 2019, research and development expenses increased by \$984,026, as compared to the six months ended June 30, 2018. The increase is primarily due to an increase in license fees, contract manufacturing expenses and contract research and development expenses, as the procurement of the Credit Agreement has allowed us to continue to focus on ramping up our research and development efforts.

General and administrative. General and administrative expenses for the six months ended June 30, 2019 were \$2,276,928, which primarily consisted of salaries, stock compensation expense, general legal and patent related fees, consulting fees and professional fees related to the Company's capital raising efforts and regulatory filings. By comparison, general and administrative expenses for the six months ended June 30, 2018 were \$2,306,551, which primarily consisted of the same components. General and administrative expenses remained relatively constant period over period.

Other expense (income). For the six months ended June 30, 2019, the Company had other income of \$4,418,452 related primarily to the decrease in fair value of our derivative liabilities which was driven by the decrease in our stock price. In addition, we initiated drawdowns under the Credit Agreement which required us to bifurcate compound embedded derivatives and record an additional charge for the fair value of such instruments in excess of proceeds. We also realized additional interest expense for the six months ended June 30, 2019 as compared to the six months ended June 30, 2018 due to the amortization of the debt discount and interest payments associated with the outstanding balance under the Credit Agreement which was entered during the fourth quarter of 2018.

For the six months ended June 30, 2018, the Company had other expense of \$8,542,600 which consisted of the following primary components:

- \$602,749 represented a net increase in fair value of our derivative liabilities for the six-month period ended June 30, 2018.
- \$7,174,634 represented a loss from the excess of the fair value of the warrants on the date of issuance over the proceeds received in the Emerald Financing transaction.
- We recognized \$590,392 and \$34,608 from a loss on extinguishment and amortization of the discount, respectively, related to the Convertible debt - related party
- \$137,191 in financing costs related to the Emerald Financing transaction.

Net income (loss) and comprehensive income (loss). For the six months ended June 30, 2019, we had net income of \$1,130,898 as compared to a net loss of \$10,875,793 for the six months ended June 30, 2018. The change to net income from a net loss was primarily attributable to an increase in other income and offset by an increase in research and development expenses. We expect to incur net losses for the foreseeable future.

For the years ended December 31, 2018 and 2017

Revenues. To date, we have not generated any revenues, and do not expect to generate any revenue from the sale of products in the near future.

Operating expenses. For the year ended December 31, 2018, our total operating expenses were \$4,692,523 as compared to \$3,859,229 for the year ended December 31, 2017. The increase in operating expenses was due to the items noted below.

Research and development. Research and development expenses for the year ended December 31, 2018 were \$329,966, which consisted of the annual license maintenance fees for UM 5070, annual license maintenance fees for UM 5050 related to ocular delivery, annual license maintenance fees for UM 8930 related to ocular delivery, contract research and development fees and fees related to our contract with AMRI to manufacture our prodrug of THC. Research and development expenses for the year ended December 31, 2017 were \$311,302, which consisted of consisted of a one-time upfront payment for UM 5070, as well as annual license maintenance fees for UM 5050 related to ocular, oral and rectal delivery, annual license maintenance fees for UM 8930 related to ocular and rectal delivery, option agreement renewal fees with UM and contract research and development fees.

Table of Contents

General and administrative. General and administrative expenses for the year ended December 31, 2018 were \$4,362,557, which primarily consisted of salaries, consulting fees, stock-based compensation expense and professional fees associated with our costs of being a public company. Our general and administrative expenses for the year ended December 31, 2017 were \$3,547,927 and were comprised of the same components. The increase in general and administrative expenses for the year ended December 31, 2018 as compared to the year ended December 31, 2017 relates primarily to higher consulting fees associated with the Emerald Health Sciences consulting contract, audit fees, accounting consulting fees and the costs associated with the changeover in management.

Other income and expenses. For the year ended December 31, 2018, the Company had non-operating expense of approximately \$14,500,000, which was comprised primarily of the following:

- 1) \$6,503,174 of other expense from the change in fair value of derivative liabilities which represents an overall increase in the fair value of our derivative liabilities. The derivatives marked-to-market include the conversion liabilities related to the Series B Preferred Stock and Secured Convertible Promissory Note – related party, the Series B and Emerald Health Sciences warrant liabilities and the compound derivative bifurcated from the Credit Agreement (defined below). A number of assumptions go into the third-party valuations for each of these instruments however the increase in our stock price, update to our volatility assumption and valuation assumptions were all contributing factors to the increase in the value of these instruments during the year ended December 31, 2018.
- 2) \$7,174,634 represented a loss from the excess of the fair value of the warrants on the date of issuance over the proceeds received in the Emerald Health Sciences Financing (defined below).
- 3) \$137,192 in financing costs related to the Emerald Health Sciences Financing.
- 4) \$590,392 from a loss on extinguishment related to the Secured Convertible Promissory Note.
- 5) \$94,763 from interest expense which includes non-cash interest expense from the amortization of the debt discounts and cash interest paid to debt holders.

For the year ended December 31, 2017, the Company had non-operating income of \$767,000, which was comprised primarily of the following:

- 1) \$767,198 of other income from the change in fair value of derivative liabilities which represents an overall decrease in the change in the fair value of our derivative liabilities. The derivatives marked-to-market include the conversion liability related to the Series B Preferred Stock, the put option right related to the Series F Preferred Stock and the Series B warrant liability. A number of assumptions go into the third-party valuations for each of these instruments however the decrease in our stock price at year end was one of the contributing factors to the decrease in the value of these instruments during the year ended December 31, 2017.

Net Loss. For the year ended December 31, 2018, we had a net loss of \$19,194,236 as compared to a net loss of \$3,094,298 for the year ended December 31, 2017. We expect to incur net losses for the foreseeable future.

Liquidity and Capital Resources

We have incurred operating losses and negative cash flows from operations since our inception and as of June 30, 2019, had an accumulated deficit of \$32,094,209, a stockholders' deficit of \$11,641,442 and a working capital deficit of \$8,025,743. We anticipate that we will continue to incur net losses into the foreseeable future in order to advance and develop several potential drug candidates into preclinical and clinical development activities and support our corporate infrastructure, which includes the costs associated with being a public company. We had cash of \$2,807,826 as of June 30, 2019, as compared to \$1,853,373 as of December 31, 2018. This increase is primarily attributable to the proceeds of \$4,000,000 from the Credit Agreement with Emerald Health Sciences, as discussed below and in the notes to our financial statements. Without additional funding, management believes that we will not have enough funds to meet our obligations beyond one year after the date the Condensed Consolidated Financial Statements are issued. These conditions give rise to substantial doubt as to our ability to continue as a going concern.

[Table of Contents](#)

On October 5, 2018, we secured the Credit Agreement with Emerald Health Sciences, providing for a credit facility of up to \$20,000,000 to the Company. Under the Credit Agreement, we can draw up to \$20,000,000 in advances from Emerald Health Sciences from time to time, each in a principal amount of at least \$250,000. The advances are subject to approval by our Board, which is controlled by the directors and principal executive officer of Emerald Health Sciences. As of June 30, 2019, we have effected three drawdowns under the Credit Agreement, each in the amount of \$2,000,000, for an aggregate principal amount of \$6,000,000 in advances, and have issued to Emerald Health Sciences warrants to purchase an aggregate of 7,500,000 shares of common stock at an exercise price of \$0.50 per share.

We intend to continue working toward identifying and obtaining new sources of financing. No assurances can be given that we will be successful in obtaining additional financing in the future. Any future financing that we may obtain may cause significant dilution to existing stockholders. Any debt financing or other financing of securities senior to common stock that we are able to obtain will likely include financial and other covenants that will restrict our flexibility. Any failure to comply with these covenants would have a negative impact on our business, prospects, financial condition, results of operations and cash flows.

If adequate funds are not available, we may be required to delay, scale back or eliminate portions of our operations, cease operations or obtain funds through arrangements with strategic partners or others that may require us to relinquish rights to certain of our assets. Accordingly, the inability to obtain such financing could result in a significant loss of ownership and/or control of our assets and could also adversely affect our ability to fund our continued operations and our expansion efforts.

During the next 12 months, we expect to incur significant research and development expenses with respect to our products. The majority of our research and development activity is focused on development of potential drug candidates and preclinical trials.

We also expect to incur significant legal and accounting costs in connection with being a public company. We expect those fees will be significant and will continue to impact our liquidity. Those fees will be higher as our business volume and activity increases.

We also anticipate that we will need to hire additional employees or independent contractors as the Company prepares to enter clinical studies.

Going Concern

Our independent registered public accounting firm has issued a report on our audited financial statements for the fiscal year ended December 31, 2018 that included an explanatory paragraph referring to our recurring operating losses and expressing substantial doubt in our ability to continue as a going concern. Our consolidated financial statements have been prepared on a going concern basis, which assumes the realization of assets and settlement of liabilities in the normal course of business. Our ability to continue as a going concern is dependent upon our ability to generate profitable operations in the future and/or to obtain the necessary financing to meet our obligations and repay our liabilities arising from normal business operations when they become due. The outcome of these matters cannot be predicted with any certainty at this time and raise substantial doubt that we will be able to continue as a going concern. Our consolidated financial statements do not include any adjustments to the amount and classification of assets and liabilities that may be necessary should we be unable to continue as a going concern.

[Table of Contents](#)

Off-Balance Sheet Arrangements

There are no off-balance sheet arrangements that have or are reasonably likely to have a current or future effect on our financial condition, changes in financial condition, revenues or expenses, results of operations, liquidity, capital expenditures or capital resources that is material to investors.

MANAGEMENT

The following table sets forth certain information as of the date of this prospectus, with respect to our directors, executive officers and significant employees.

Name	Age	Position
Dr. Brian S. Murphy	62	Chief Executive Officer, Director
Douglas Cesario	44	Chief Financial Officer
Dr. Dennis Kim	49	Chief Medical Officer
Punit Dhillon	39	Director
Jim Heppell	63	Director
Dr. Avtar Dhillon	58	Executive Chairman

Biographies of Directors, Executive Officers and Significant Employees

Dr. Brian S. Murphy. Dr. Murphy was appointed as our Chief Executive Officer and as a director in August 2015. Dr. Murphy was appointed as our Chief Medical Officer in October 2014, and relinquished Chief Medical Officer responsibilities when Dr. Kim was hired in August 2019. Dr. Murphy was the Chief Medical Officer of Nemus Sub from August 2014 to October 2014. From 2009 to August 2014, Dr. Murphy served as the Chief Medical Officer of Eiger Biopharmaceuticals. From 2003 to 2006, Dr. Murphy was Chief Medical Officer at Epiphany Biosciences. From 2003 to 2006, Dr. Murphy was Chief Medical Officer at Valeant Pharmaceuticals International (VRX) where his responsibilities also included oversight of Global Medical Affairs and Pharmacovigilance. Dr. Murphy also served as Medical Director, then Vice President of Marketing and Commercial Strategy of Hepatology for InterMune, Inc. (ITMN). From 2000 to 2002, Dr. Murphy was Medical Director of North America for Antivirals/Interferons/Transplant at Hoffmann-LaRoche. Prior to joining industry, Dr. Murphy was Assistant Professor of Medicine at New York Medical College and was Director of the Clinical Strategies Program at St. Vincent's Hospital in New York City, the lead hospital of the Catholic Healthcare Network of New York. Dr. Murphy is board-certified in internal medicine and completed his residency in internal medicine at Tufts-New England Medical Center and served as Chief Medical Resident in the Boston University program. Dr. Murphy completed parallel fellowship tracts at Harvard Medical School, one in internal medicine/clinical Epidemiology at the Massachusetts General Hospital and the other in Medical Ethics addressing issues of distributive justice and access to care at Brigham & Women's Hospital. Dr. Murphy earned his MD, MPH (general public health), and MS (pharmacology) degrees from New York Medical College and is a graduate of the Harvard School of Public Health (MPH in Health Policy and Management). He earned his MBA at the Columbia University Graduate School of Business. In making the decision to appoint Dr. Murphy to serve as a director, the Board considered, in addition to the criteria referred to above, his experience in the healthcare industry, current service as our Chief Executive Officer and his comprehensive knowledge of the Company, its business and operations.

Douglas Cesario. Mr. Cesario was appointed as our Chief Financial Officer in 2018. Prior to his appointment, Mr. Cesario served as Chief Financial Officer, Orange County Service Area, of Kaiser Foundation Hospitals & Health Plan since April 2016, and prior to that as Director of Finance and as a Senior Management Consultant from November 2013. From 2007 to 2012, Mr. Cesario was the founder of a real estate investment and advisory company. Mr. Cesario previously served in private equity, investment banking and commercial real estate roles from 1997 through 2006. He earned his MBA from the UCLA Anderson School of Management. Based on his cumulative and diverse financial background, our Board believes Mr. Cesario has the requisite knowledge and expertise to serve as the Chief Financial Officer of the Company.

Dr. Dennis Kim. Dr. Kim was appointed Chief Medical Officer in August 2019. He is a physician biotechnology executive with specialty training in endocrinology/metabolism spanning approximately 20 years of drug/product development and corporate strategy experience in the biotech and medical technology industries. Dr. Kim previously served as Chief Medical Officer of Emerald Health Sciences, Inc. Prior to that he was Chief Medical Officer at Zafgen, Inc. for over 7 years where he oversaw all aspects of clinical and medical affairs in the field of diabetes, obesity, and rare metabolic/genetic disorders. Prior to joining Zafgen, Dr. Kim held multiple senior-level positions at Orexigen Therapeutics (Sr. VP of Medical and Clinical Affairs), EnteroMedics (Chief Medical Officer) and Amylin Pharmaceuticals (Exec Director of Corporate Strategy). He holds an MD from the University of Health Sciences, The Chicago Medical School, an MBA from UCSD Rady School of Management and a B.S. in biology from the University of California at Los Angeles. His endocrinology/metabolism specialty fellowship training was completed at UCSD School of Medicine.

Dr. Avtar Dhillon. Dr. Dhillon was appointed as Executive Chairman of the Board and a member of our management team in 2018. Dr. Dhillon is a successful entrepreneur who has been instrumental in founding and helping to develop a number of companies, including: OncoSec Biomedical (NASDAQ: ONCS) developing leading DNA-based intratumoral cancer immunotherapies, where he has been Chairman of the Board since inception in 2011; Inovio Pharmaceuticals (NASDAQ: INO) developing next-generation DNA based vaccines where he led the turnaround of the company, served as its CEO for several years, and is currently Chairman of the Board; and Vitality Biopharma (OTCQB: VBIO) combining agriculture and biotech to study potential to ferment stevia as a health sugar substitute and subsequently developing cannabinoid pro-drugs using similar techniques and bioreactors, serving as Chairman since January 2012. Dr. Dhillon has also served as Executive Chairman of the Board of Directors of Emerald Health Therapeutics (TSX.V: EMH) since April 2015, and currently serves as the Chairman, CEO and President of Emerald Health Sciences, which became the majority stockholder of the Company in 2018. Dr. Dhillon has more than 25 years of experience in building public life science companies organically and through mergers and acquisitions, leading innovation in scientific, engineering and farming enterprises, securing over US \$100 million government grants and NGO funding for his companies, and building dominant IP portfolios through partnering and negotiating transactions with small businesses and large multibillion dollar companies. Our Board believes Dr. Dhillon's extensive experience in building and developing life sciences companies will be invaluable to our Company as we continue to grow our operations and develop our product candidates.

Punit Dhillon. Mr. Dhillon was appointed as a member of our Board in connection with the consummation of the investment in the Company by Emerald Health Sciences in 2018. Mr. Dhillon is currently a board member of Emerald Health Sciences, Inc., Emerald Health Therapeutics, Inc. (EMH), a TSX Venture Exchange listed company, and Arch Therapeutics Inc (OTCQB). Mr. Dhillon is a Co-founder and Director of OncoSec Medical Incorporated (NASDAQ: ONCS) and was formerly the CEO through March 2018. Prior to OncoSec, Mr. Dhillon was the Vice President of Finance and Operations at Inovio Pharmaceuticals, Inc. (NASDAQ: INO) from September 2003 until March 2011. Mr. Dhillon has also previously been a consultant and board member for several TSX Venture Exchange listed early stage life science companies, which matured through advances in their development pipelines and subsequent M&A transactions. Prior to joining Inovio, Mr. Dhillon worked for a corporate finance law firm as a law clerk and worked with MDS Capital Corp. (now Lumira Capital Corp.). Mr. Dhillon is an active member in his community and places great value on helping future leaders overcome challenges through mentorship and education and is a co-founder and board member of Young Entrepreneurship Leadership Launchpad (YELL), a not-for-profit and charity organization based in Canada. Mr. Dhillon has a Bachelor of Arts with honors in Political Science and a minor in Business Administration from Simon Fraser University. Mr. Dhillon's experience in the biotechnology and pharmaceutical industry, and his experience with publicly traded companies were the primary qualifications that the Board considered in appointing him as a director of the Company.

Jim Heppell. Mr. Heppell was the founder, CEO and director of BC Advantage Life Sciences I Fund, which won the Canadian Venture Capital Deal of the Year Award in 2006 for having the highest realized return (23.4x its investment in Aspreva Pharmaceuticals) of any venture capital fund in Canada. Mr. Heppell has a Bachelor of Science degree in Microbiology and a law degree from the University of British Columbia. After being called to the Bar, he worked for six years with Fasken Martineau DuMoulin, during which time he was seconded to the BC Securities Commission for six months. Mr. Heppell then became President and Chief Executive Officer of Catalyst Corporate Finance Lawyers, a boutique corporate finance law firm that focused on assisting life science and technology companies. He is a past member of the Securities Policy Advisory Committee to the BCSC and is a Past-Chairman of the Securities Section of the Canadian Bar Association (B.C. Branch). Mr. Heppell is currently a director of a number of public and private life science companies, including Emerald Health Sciences. The Board considered Mr. Heppell's significant experience with life science and technology companies in making the decision to appoint him as a director of the Company.

[Table of Contents](#)

Section 16(a) Beneficial Ownership Reporting Compliance

Section 16(a) of the Exchange Act requires our directors, executive officers, and any persons who own more than 10% of a registered class of our equity securities, to file reports of ownership and changes in ownership with the SEC. SEC regulation requires executive officers, directors and greater than 10% stockholders to furnish us with copies of all Section 16(a) forms they file. Based solely on our review of the copies of such forms received by us, or written representations from certain reporting persons, we believe that during the year ended December 31, 2018, our executive officers, directors, and greater than 10% stockholders complied with all applicable filing requirements.

Family Relationships

There are no family relationships among our directors or executive officers, except as follows: Dr. Avtar Dhillon is the uncle of Mr. Punit Dhillon.

Term of Office of Directors

Our directors are elected at each annual meeting of stockholders and serve until the next annual meeting of stockholders or until their successor has been duly elected and qualified, or until their earlier death, resignation or removal.

Directors and Officers Involvement in Certain Legal Proceedings

During the past ten years, our directors and executive officers have not been involved in any of the legal proceedings set forth in Item 401(f) of Regulation S-K promulgated by the SEC.

Board and Committee Meetings

During 2018, our Board met three times (including telephonic meetings) and took action by written consent 11 times. Each director attended at least 75%

of the meetings held by the Board and by each committee on which he served while he was a director, either in person or by teleconference, during the year.

Director Attendance at Annual Meetings

Although we do not have a formal policy regarding attendance by members of our Board at each annual meeting of stockholders, we encourage all of our directors to attend.

Audit Committee and Financial Expert

On February 23, 2015, our Board established an audit committee which operates under a written charter that has been approved by our Board. The members of our audit committee are Mr. Punit Dhillon and Mr. Jim Heppell. Mr. Dhillon serves as chairman of the audit committee and our Board has determined that he is an “audit committee financial expert” as defined by applicable SEC rules. The Board has determined that Mr. Dhillon and Mr. Heppell are independent directors as that term is defined in Rule 5605(a)(2) of the Nasdaq Listing Rules, and we have determined that both Mr. Dhillon and Mr. Heppell as audit committee members meet the more stringent requirements under Rule 5605(c)(2) of the Nasdaq Listing Rules. Our audit committee met two times (including telephonic meetings) and took action by written consent three times.

Our audit committee is responsible for: (1) selection and oversight of our independent accountant; (2) establishing procedures for the receipt, retention and treatment of complaints regarding accounting, internal controls and auditing matters; (3) establishing procedures for the confidential, anonymous submission by our employees of concerns regarding accounting and auditing matters; (4) engaging outside advisors; and, (5) approving fees for the independent auditor and any outside advisors engaged by the audit committee. The Audit Committee Charter is filed as Exhibit 99.1 to our Report on Form 8-K filed on February 27, 2015.

[Table of Contents](#)

Compensation Committee

On May 31, 2015, our Board established a compensation and compliance committee which operated under a written charter that was approved by the Board. In 2018, the Board dissolved the former compensation and compliance committee and established a new compensation committee which operates under a written charter approved by the Board. The members of our compensation committee are Mr. Punit Dhillon, Dr. Avtar Dhillon and Mr. Jim Heppell. Mr. Heppell serves as chairman of the compensation committee. Our compensation committee met one time during 2018 (including telephonic meetings) and took action by written consent three times.

Our compensation committee is responsible for the oversight of, and the annual and ongoing review of, the Chief Executive Officer, the compensation of the senior management team, and the bonus programs in place for employees, which includes: (1) reviewing the performance of the Chief Executive Officer and such other senior officers as the Board may request, and determining the bonus entitlement for such officer or officers on an annual basis and recommending the same to the Board for approval; (2) determining the proposed annual compensation of the executive officers of the Company for each fiscal year and recommending the same to the Board for approval; (3) reviewing and discussing the bonus plan proposed for the Company's senior management team with the Chief Executive Officer; (4) reviewing and discussing the terms and conditions of proposed grants of stock options to directors, employees, consultants and advisors with the Chief Executive Officer; (5) reviewing and recommending to the Board the compensation of the Board and committee members; (6) reviewing and discussing with the Chief Executive Officer the standard forms of employment and consulting contracts used by the Company; (7) reviewing and discussing with the Chief Executive Officer the general benefit plans in place for employees; (8) engaging and setting the compensation for independent counsel and other advisors and consultants; and (9) reviewing and assessing the adequacy of its Charter and submitting any recommended changes to our Board for its consideration and approval.

Nomination and Corporate Governance Committee

In 2018, our Board established a nominating and corporate governance committee which operates under a written charter approved by the Board. The members of our nominating and corporate governance committee are Mr. Punit Dhillon and Mr. Jim Heppell. Mr. Heppell serves as chairman of the nominating and corporate governance committee. Our nominating and corporate governance committee did not meet or take action by written consent in 2018.

Our nominating and corporate governance committee is responsible for assisting the Board in (1) identifying qualified individuals to become Board members, consistent with criteria approved by the Board, (2) determining the composition of the Board and its committees, (3) selecting the director nominees for the next annual meeting of shareholders, (4) monitoring a process to assess Board, committee and management effectiveness, (5) aiding and monitoring management succession planning and (6) developing, recommending to the Board, implementing and monitoring policies and processes related to the Company's corporate governance guidelines.

Finance and Business Development Committee

In 2018, our Board established a finance and business development committee which operates under a written charter approved by the Board. The members of our finance and business development committee are Dr. Avtar Dhillon, Mr. Punit Dhillon and Mr. Jim Heppell. Dr. Avtar Dhillon serves as chairman of the finance and business development committee. Our finance and business development committee did not meet or take action by written consent in 2018.

Our finance and business development committee is responsible for assisting the Board in (1) matters affecting the Company's balance sheet, including capital structure strategies, debt and equity financings and working capital (2) analysis and assessment of financial and strategic aspects of major acquisitions and divestitures, collaborations and joint ventures, (3) formulating and recommending for approval to the Board the financial policies of the Company, including management of the financial affairs of the Company, (4) developing and maintaining relationships with investment banks, financial institutions and other investors and monitor developments in the capital markets and financing trends, and (5) evaluating and making recommendations to the Board concerning business development opportunities

[Table of Contents](#)

Nominations to the Board of Directors

We do not have any defined policy or procedural requirements for shareholders to submit recommendations or nominations for directors. Our Board believes that, given the stage of our development, a specific nominating policy would be premature and of little assistance until our business operations develop to a more advanced level. We do not currently have any specific or minimum criteria for the election of nominees to the Board. The Board, with the help of its nomination and corporate governance committee, will assess all candidates, whether submitted by management or shareholders, and make recommendations for election or appointment.

Stockholder Communications

We do not have a formal policy regarding stockholder communications with our Board. A shareholder who wishes to communicate with our Board may do so by directing a written request addressed to our Chief Executive Officer, at the address appearing on the first page of this filing.

Code of Ethics

On October 31, 2014, we adopted a formal code of ethics that applies to our principal executive officer, principal financial officer, principal accounting officer or controller, or persons performing similar functions, as well as our other officers, directors and employees. A copy of our code of ethics is available on our website at www.emeraldbio.life. We intend to disclose any future amendments to provisions of our code of ethics, or waivers of provisions required to be disclosed under the rules of the SEC, on a current report on Form 8-K or at the same location on our website identified in the preceding sentence. Any amendment or waiver disclosed on our website will remain available on our website for at least 12 months after the initial disclosure.

Summary Compensation Table

The following table sets forth information concerning the compensation earned for services rendered to the Company for the fiscal years ended December 31, 2018 and 2017 of our named executive officers as determined in accordance with SEC rules.

SUMMARY COMPENSATION TABLE

Name and Principal Position	Year	Salary (\$)	Bonus (\$)	Stock Awards (\$ (1))	Option Awards (\$ (1))	Non-Equity Incentive Plan Compensation (\$)	Nonqualified Deferred Compensation Earnings (\$)	All Other Compensation (\$)	Total (\$)
Dr. Brian S. Murphy, CEO/CMO	2018	390,000	-	171,000	-	-	-	-	561,000
	2017	448,846	-	-	-	-	-	-	448,846
Doug Cesario, CFO	2018	174,038	-	169,884	200,772	-	-	-	544,694
	2017	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Elizabeth M. Berez, Former CFO (3)	2018	246,795	-	133,000	-	-	-	19,277	399,072
	2017	294,712	-	-	-	-	-	-	294,712
Avtar Dhillon, Chairman (4)	2018	-	-	-	225,000	-	-	67,885	292,885
	2017	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Cosmas N. Lykos, former Chairman (5)	2018	-	-	171,000	-	-	-	220,000(2)	391,000
	2017	-	-	-	-	-	-	210,000(2)	210,000

[Table of Contents](#)

- (1) Amounts reflect the full grant date fair value of restricted stock awards and stock options, computed in accordance with ASC Topic 718, rather than the amounts paid to or realized by the named individual. We provide information regarding the assumptions used to calculate the value of restricted stock awards granted to our executives in Note 2 and 6 to our Consolidated Financial Statements included elsewhere in this prospectus.
- (2) In June 2014, our subsidiary entered into an independent contractor agreement with K2C, Inc. (“K2C”), which is wholly owned by Mr. Lykos, pursuant to which the Company paid K2C a monthly fee for services performed by Mr. Lykos for the Company. The agreement expired on June 1, 2017 and was automatically renewed for one year pursuant to the terms of the agreement. The monthly fee under the agreement was \$10,000 until April 1, 2017, at which time it increased to a monthly fee of \$20,000. Under the agreement, Mr. Lykos was also eligible to participate in our health, death and disability insurance plans. In addition, beginning in 2015, Mr. Lykos was a participant in our change in control severance plan. Effective February 28, 2018, the Company terminated the independent contractor agreement.
- (3) Ms. Berecz separated from the Company, effective May 25, 2018, pursuant to a Separation Agreement and Release between the Company and Ms. Berecz.
- (4) Option awards granted to Dr. Dhillon represent compensation for services rendered as a member of our Board and other compensation includes Represents \$45,000 earned under the Independent Contractor Agreement (defined below) and \$22,885 in fees earned for services rendered as a member of our Board. See “Director Compensation” below.
- (5) Mr. Lykos resigned from the Board, effective January 18, 2018, in connection with the consummation of the investment in the Company by Emerald Health Sciences.

Employment and Severance Arrangements

Employment Agreements

In May 2018, we entered into an Executive Employment Agreement with Doug Cesario, our Chief Financial Officer. The agreement provides for an annual base salary of \$250,000 per year and an annual discretionary bonus based in part on Mr. Cesario’s achievement of milestones agreed to by the Board or the Compensation Committee of the Board. Pursuant to the agreement, Mr. Cesario is entitled to receive the normal benefits available to other similarly situated executives and will be entitled to severance pay under certain circumstances. Mr. Cesario’s employment with the Company is at-will. Except for termination of Mr. Cesario’s employment for “Cause,” “By Death” or “By Disability” (as such terms are defined in the agreement), Mr. Cesario will be entitled to payment of an amount equal to a minimum of six months of Mr. Cesario’s then-current base salary; and after three years of employment, Mr. Cesario will be entitled to an additional two months of his then-current base salary for each year he is employed beyond the initial three

years of employment by the Company, to a maximum of 12 months.

Pursuant to Mr. Cesario's Executive Employment Agreement, Mr. Cesario was granted a one-time sign-on restricted stock award of 643,501 shares of restricted stock pursuant to the Company's 2014 Omnibus Incentive Plan on July 23, 2018, which is the date that was 90 days after Mr. Cesario's start date as an employee with the Company. 100% of the restricted stock award will vest on April 23, 2020, or upon a trigger event, including the sale of the Company or a merger that results in a change of control.

In August 2019, we entered into a letter agreement with Dr. Dennis Kim, our Chief Medical Officer. The agreement provides for an annual base salary of \$330,000 per year and an annual discretionary bonus target of up to 35% of annual salary. Pursuant to the agreement, Dr. Kim is entitled to receive the normal benefits available to other similarly situated executives and will be entitled to severance pay under circumstances. Dr. Kim's employment with the Company is at-will. Except for termination of Dr. Kim's employment for "Cause," by death or by "Disability" (as such terms are defined in the agreement), Dr. Kim will be entitled to payment of an amount equal to six months of his then-current base salary for the first full year of continuous employment with the Company or twelve months after the first full year. Dr. Kim may take on advisory and consulting roles for up to 20% of his time so long as such roles do not conflict with the performance of his duties and responsibilities with the Company.

Pursuant to Dr. Kim's agreement, Dr. Kim was granted a one-time sign-on award of options to purchase an aggregate of 736,541 shares of common stock of the Company pursuant to the Plan. Subject to continued employment with the Company, the stock options vest 25% 90 days after his employment commenced and the remaining 75% vests 1/33rd on each of the next 33 months thereafter.

The foregoing description of the employment agreements does not purport to be complete and is qualified in its entirety by reference to the full text of the employment agreements attached hereto as an exhibit and incorporated by reference herein.

[Table of Contents](#)

Severance Arrangements

In February 2015, we adopted a change in control severance plan, in which our named executive officers participate, that provides for the payment of severance benefits if the executive's service is terminated within twelve months following a change in control, either due to a termination without cause or upon a resignation for good reason (as each term is defined in the plan).

In either such event, and provided the executive timely executes and does not revoke a general release of claims against the Company, he or she will be entitled to receive: (i) a lump sum cash payment equal to at least six months' of the executive's monthly compensation, plus an additional month for each full year of service over six years, (ii) Company-paid premiums for continued health insurance for a period equal to length of the cash severance period or, if earlier, when executive becomes covered under a subsequent employer's healthcare plan, and (iii) full vesting of all then-outstanding unvested stock options and restricted stock awards.

The restricted stock award and options granted to Mr. Cesario in July 2018, will vest in full on a change in control (as defined in our 2014 Omnibus Incentive Plan).

In January 2018, we entered into a restricted stock agreement (the "Restricted Stock Agreements") with each of Dr. Murphy, Elizabeth Berecz and Cosmas N. Lykos granting 900,000, 700,000 and 900,000 shares of restricted Common Stock, respectively. Each Restricted Stock Agreement provides that if the executive's employment or service is terminated by us without cause, or is terminated by the grantee for good reason, then the executive shall be entitled to receive a cash severance payment equal to six months of their base compensation, payable in substantially equal installments during the six-month period following the termination date.

In February 2018, we entered into a separation and release agreement with K2C, which provided for a lump sum payment of \$180,000 and the immediate vesting of 900,000 shares of restricted common stock granted pursuant to the Restricted Stock Agreement, 325,000 shares of restricted common stock granted on October 20, 2015, 125,000 options granted on November 21, 2014, in exchange for a release of claims and certain other agreements. In addition, K2C also holds 1,110,000 shares of fully vested common stock pursuant to the common stock purchase warrant agreement dated June 20, 2013.

In April 2018, we entered into a Separation Agreement and Release with Elizabeth Berez, our former Chief Financial Officer. Pursuant to the agreement, Ms. Berez agreed to certain ongoing cooperation obligations during a transition period and agreed to provide certain releases and waivers as contained in the agreement. As consideration under the agreement, the Company agreed to provide Ms. Berez compensation and benefits as follows: (i) through May 25, 2018, Ms. Berez's separation date, an annualized base salary at the rate in effect as of the date of the separation agreement; (ii) a lump sum gross payment of \$145,833, in consideration for the restrictive covenants contained in the separation agreement; and (iii) reimbursement for payments made by Ms. Berez for COBRA coverage for a period of six (6) months following her separation date. In addition, the terms of the separation agreement provided for the immediate vesting of 700,000 shares of restricted common stock granted pursuant to Ms. Berez's Restricted Stock Agreement, 350,000 shares of restricted common stock granted on October 20, 2015, and 250,000 options granted in October 2014 and November 2014.

The foregoing descriptions of the separation agreements do not purport to be complete and are qualified in their entirety by reference to the full text of such separation agreements attached hereto as exhibits and incorporated by reference herein.

[Table of Contents](#)

Outstanding Equity Awards at Fiscal Year-end

As of December 31, 2018, our named executive officers held the following outstanding Company equity awards.

Name	Grant Date	Option Awards				Stock Awards	
		Number of Securities Underlying Unexercised Options (#) Exercisable	Number of Securities Underlying Unexercised Options (#) Un-exercisable	Option Exercise Price	Option Expiration Date	Number of Shares of Stock Not Vested (#)	Market Value of Shares Not Vested (\$)(2)
Dr. Brian S. Murphy,	(1) 10/31/2014	384,000	96,000	\$ 0.42	10/31/2024		
CEO/CMO	(1) 11/21/2014	140,000	35,000	\$ 0.42	11/21/2024		

	(6)	1/1/2018					900,000	360,000
Doug Cesario, CFO	(3) (4)	5/25/2018 5/25/2018	434,572	760,501	\$	0.245	5/25/2028	643,501 257,400
Avtar Dhillon, Chairman	(5)	10/10/2018	166,667	833,333	\$	0.305	10/10/2028	

- (1) The options specified above vest as follows: 20% of total vests on each anniversary of the grant date over five years, subject to the grantee's continued service. The options granted expire 10 years after the date of grant.
- (2) The market value of shares that have not vested is calculated based on the per share closing price of our common stock on December 31, 2018.
- (3) The options specified above vest as follows: 25% of total vests on the grant date and 1/33 each month thereafter on the anniversary of the grant date.
- (4) The restricted stock vests in full on the two-year anniversary of the grant date, subject to the grantee's continued service.
- (5) The options specified above vest in twelve equal monthly installments following the grant date.
- (6) The restricted stock vests 1/2 each year on the anniversary of the grant date and is subject to acceleration upon termination.

Non-Equity Incentive Plan Awards

In May 2018, in connection with the appointment of Mr. Cesario as our Chief Financial Officer and pursuant to the terms of the Executive Employment Agreement between the Company and Mr. Cesario, we entered into a stock option award agreement with Mr. Cesario pursuant to which Mr. Cesario was granted non-qualified stock options to purchase an aggregate of 1,195,073 shares of the Company's common stock at an exercise price of \$0.245 per share on July 23, 2018. 25% of the options vested on the date of grant and the remaining 75% of the options vest 1/33 on each of the next 33 months thereafter. The options will fully vest upon a trigger event, including the sale of the Company or a merger that results in a change of control.

Exercises of Options

There were no exercises of stock options by our named executive officers during the year ended December 31, 2018.

Director Compensation

On October 10, 2018, the Company amended its policy for the compensation of its non-employee directors as follows:

- Each non-employee director will receive a cash retainer of \$40,000 on an annual basis, and the executive chair of the Board, if a non-employee director, will receive an additional \$40,000 retainer annually.
- Upon election to the Board, non-employee directors will receive a one-time award of 200,000 stock options which will vest in twelve equal monthly installments. In subsequent annual periods, each non-employee director will receive a grant of 100,000 common stock options which will vest in twelve equal monthly installments.

[Table of Contents](#)

Non-employee directors who serve as members of special committees of the Board will receive additional compensation as follows:

- Audit Committee: \$5,000 per year (\$20,000 for the chair)
- Compensation Committee: \$2,500 per year (\$10,000 for the chair)
- Nominating and Corporate Governance Committee: \$1,000 per year (\$5,000 for the chair)
- Finance and Business Development Special Committee: \$40,000 per year for the chair (no compensation for other members)

Our directors received the following compensation for their service as directors of the Company during the fiscal year ended December 31, 2018.

DIRECTOR COMPENSATION (1)

Name	Fees Earned or Paid in Cash	Stock Awards \$ (2)	Option Awards \$ (2)	Non-Equity Incentive Plan Compensation \$	Non-Qualified Deferred Compensation Earnings \$	All Other Compensation \$	Total \$
Punit Dhillon	37,105	-	45,000	-	-	-	82,105
Jim Heppell	34,804	-	45,000	-	-	-	79,804
Avtar Dhillon	22,885	-	225,000	-	-	-	247,885

(1) Does not include compensation received for services provided as executive officers.

(2) Amounts reflect the full grant date fair value of restricted stock awards and stock options, computed in accordance with ASC Topic 718, rather than the amounts paid to or realized by the named individual. We provide information regarding the assumptions used to calculate the value of restricted stock awards and options granted to our directors in Note 2 and 6 to our Consolidated Financial Statements included elsewhere in this prospectus.

Securities Authorized for Issuance under Equity Compensation Plans. The table below includes the following information as of December 31, 2018 for the Emerald Bioscience, Inc. 2014 Omnibus Incentive Plan. Shares available for issuance under the 2014 Omnibus Incentive Plan can be granted pursuant to stock options, stock appreciation rights, restricted stock, restricted stock unit awards, performance awards and other stock-based or cash-based awards, as selected by the plan administrator. For additional information about the 2014 Omnibus Incentive Plan, refer to Note 6 to our Consolidated Financial Statements included elsewhere in this prospectus.

Equity Compensation Plan Information

Plan category	Number of shares of common stock to be issued upon exercise of outstanding options, warrants and rights (a)	Weighted- average exercise price of outstanding options, warrants and rights (b)	Number of shares of common stock remaining available for future issuance under equity compensation plans (excluding shares of common stock reflected in column (a)) (c)
Equity compensation plans approved by security holders	2,405,000	\$ 0.33	9,142,273
Equity compensation plans not approved by security holders (1)	1,195,073	0.245	--
Total	3,600,073	\$ 0.302	9,142,273

(1) Reflects 1,195,073 shares of common stock issuable upon exercise of stock options granted to Mr. Cesario with an exercise price equal to \$0.245 pursuant to a Stock Option Agreement.

[Table of Contents](#)

Security Ownership of Certain Beneficial Owners and Management

The following table sets forth certain information with respect to beneficial ownership of our common stock, by:

- Each person known to be the beneficial owner of 5% or more of our outstanding common stock;
- Each executive officer;
- Each director; and
- All of the executive officers and directors as a group.

Beneficial ownership has been determined in accordance with Rule 13d-3 under the Exchange Act. Under this rule, certain shares may be deemed to be beneficially owned by more than one person (if, for example, persons share the power to vote or the power to dispose of the shares). In addition, shares are deemed to be beneficially owned by a person if the person has the right to acquire shares (for example, upon exercise of an option or warrant) within 60 days of the date as of which the information is provided. In computing the percentage ownership of any person, the amount of shares is deemed to include the amount of shares beneficially owned by such person by reason of such acquisition rights. As a result, the percentage of outstanding shares of any person as shown in the following table does not necessarily reflect the person's actual voting power at any particular date.

The information set forth in the table below is based on 134,095,247 shares of our common stock issued and outstanding on November 11, 2019.

To our knowledge, except as indicated in the footnotes to this table and pursuant to applicable community property laws, the persons named in the table have sole voting and investment power with respect to all shares of common stock shown as beneficially owned by them. Unless otherwise indicated, the address of each beneficial owner listed below is 130 North Marina Drive, Long Beach, CA 90803.

Name and Address of Beneficial Owner	Amount and Nature of Beneficial Ownership	Percent of Class
Emerald Health Sciences Inc. (1)	136,576,416(2)	69.1%
Dr. Brian S. Murphy	1,930,000(3)	1.4%
Doug Cesario	1,404,002(4)	1.0%
Dr. Dennis Kim	200,875(5)	*%
Dr. Avtar Dhillon	1,000,000(6)	*%
Punit Dhillon	200,000(7)	*%
Jim Heppell	200,000(8)	*%
All executive officers and directors as a group (6 persons)	4,934,877	3.6%

Table of Contents

* Denotes less than 1% of our outstanding shares of common stock.

- (1) The address of this entity is Office 8262, The Landing, 200 – 375 Water St., Vancouver, British Columbia, Canada V6B 0M9.
- (2) Includes (i) 73,153,917 shares of common stock, (ii) 48,300,000 shares issuable on exercise of warrants and (iii) 15,122,499 shares issuable upon the conversion of outstanding principal and accrued interest associated with the Credit Agreement.
- (3) Includes (i) 655,000 shares of common stock underlying options that may be exercised within 60 days of November 11, 2019, (ii) 825,000 shares of fully vested restricted stock and (iii) 450,000 shares of restricted stock subject to vesting.
- (4) Includes (i) 760,501 shares of common stock underlying options that may be exercised within 60 days of November 11, 2019, and (ii) 643,501 shares of restricted stock subject to vesting.
- (5) Includes 200,875 shares of common stock underlying options that may be exercised within 60 days of November 11, 2019.
- (6) Includes 1,000,000 shares of common stock underlying options that may be exercised within 60 days of November 11, 2019.
- (7) Includes 200,000 shares of common stock underlying options that may be exercised within 60 days of November 11, 2019.
- (8) Includes 200,000 shares of common stock underlying options that may be exercised within 60 days of November 11, 2019.

Changes in Control

Our management is not aware of any arrangements which may result in “changes in control” as that term is defined by the provisions of Item 403(c) of Regulation S-K.

CERTAIN RELATIONSHIPS AND RELATED TRANSACTIONS AND DIRECTOR INDEPENDENCE

Transactions with Related Persons

Except as specified below, there have been no other transactions with related persons in the last two fiscal years, or any currently proposed transaction, in which we were or are to be a participant and the amount involved exceeds the lesser of \$120,000 or 1% of the average of the Company’s total assets as of December 31, 2017 and 2018, and in which any related person had or will have a direct or indirect material interest.

K2C

In June 2014, our subsidiary entered into an independent contractor agreement with K2C, which is wholly owned by Mr. Lykos, who served as the Chairman of our Board until January 16, 2018, pursuant to which the Company paid K2C a monthly fee for services performed by Mr. Lykos for the Company. The agreement expired on June 1, 2017 and was automatically renewed for one year pursuant to the terms of the agreement. The monthly fee under the agreement was \$10,000 and increased to \$20,000 effective April 1, 2017. In 2017 and 2018, we paid K2C \$210,000 and \$220,000 respectively. Under the agreement, Mr. Lykos was also eligible to participate in our health, death and disability insurance plans. The independent contractor agreement with K2C was terminated as of February 28, 2018.

In January 19, 2018, we entered into a Restricted Stock Agreement with K2C granting 900,000 Restricted Stock to K2C.

[Table of Contents](#)

In February 28, 2018, we entered into a separation and release agreement with K2C, which provided for a lump sum payment of \$180,000 and the immediate vesting of 900,000 shares of restricted common stock granted pursuant to the Restricted Stock Agreement, 325,000 shares of restricted common stock granted on October 20, 2015, 125,000 options granted on November 21, 2014, in exchange for a release of claims and certain other agreements. In addition, K2C also holds 1,110,000 shares of fully vested common stock pursuant to the common stock purchase warrant agreement dated June 20, 2013.

Elizabeth Berez

In April 2018, we entered into a Separation Agreement and Release with Elizabeth Berez, our former Chief Financial Officer. Pursuant to the agreement, we agreed to provide Ms. Berez compensation and benefits as follows: (i) through May 25, 2018, Ms. Berez's separation date, an annualized base salary at the rate in effect as of the date of the separation agreement; (ii) a lump sum gross payment of \$145,833, in consideration for the restrictive covenants contained in the separation agreement; and (iii) reimbursement for payments made by Ms. Berez for COBRA coverage for a period of six (6) months following her separation date. In addition, the terms of the separation agreement provided for the immediate vesting of 700,000 shares of restricted common stock granted pursuant to Ms. Berez's Restricted Stock Agreement, 350,000 shares of restricted common stock granted on October 20, 2015, and 250,000 options granted in October 2014 and November 2014.

Emerald Health Sciences

On December 28, 2017, we entered into a Secured Promissory Note and Security Agreement for a convertible loan (the "Convertible Promissory Note") with Emerald Health Sciences. The Convertible Promissory Note provided for aggregate gross proceeds to the Company of up to \$900,000 and was secured by all of the Company's assets.

On January 19, 2018, \$900,000 funded under the Convertible Promissory Note converted into 9,000,000 shares of our common stock and the Convertible Promissory Note was terminated. Simultaneously, we entered into a Securities Purchase Agreement (the “Emerald Health Sciences Financing”) in which we sold to Emerald Health Sciences 15,000,000 shares of common stock and a warrant to purchase 20,400,000 shares of common stock at an exercise price of \$0.10 for aggregate gross proceeds of \$1,500,000. The second closing under the Emerald Health Sciences Financing occurred on February 16, 2018, pursuant to which we issued and sold to Emerald Health Sciences 15,000,000 shares of our Common Stock, and a warrant to purchase 20,400,000 shares of Common Stock at an exercise price of \$0.10 per share for a term of five years, for aggregate gross proceeds of \$1,500,000.

On February 1, 2018, we entered into an Independent Contractor Agreement (the “Independent Contractor Agreement”) with Emerald Health Sciences, pursuant to which Emerald Health Sciences agreed to provide such services as are mutually agreed between the Company and Emerald Health Sciences, including reimbursements for reasonable expenses incurred in the performance of the Independent Contractor Agreement. These services may include, but are not limited to, corporate advisory services and technical expertise in the areas of business development, marketing, investor relations, information technology and product development. The Independent Contractor Agreement has an initial term of ten years and specifies compensation which is agreed upon between the Company’s chief executive officer and Emerald Health Sciences’ Chairman, CEO and President on a month-to-month basis. The fee due under this agreement is payable on a monthly basis; however, if the Company is unable to make payments due to insufficient funds, then interest on the outstanding balance will accrued at a rate of 12% per annum, calculated semi-annually. Under this agreement, the Company incurred expenses of \$550,000 during the fiscal year ended December 31, 2018.

On February 6, 2018, the Company entered into a Consulting Agreement with Dr. Avtar Dhillon, the Chairman, Chief Executive Officer and President of Emerald Health Sciences. The services under the Consulting Agreement included, corporate finance and strategic business advisory. The Consulting Agreement had an initial term of one year and was renewable automatically unless terminated by either party. The agreement specified an annual fee of \$60,000 payable semi-monthly in installments and included reimbursement for reasonable expenses incurred in the performance of the services. The contractor was also entitled to a discretionary annual bonus, payable 120 days after each fiscal year end, to be determined by the Board upon its annual review. Under this agreement, we incurred expenses in the amount of \$45,000 during the fiscal year ended December 31, 2018. This Consulting Agreement was canceled on October 5, 2018 in connection with the Company’s entry into the Credit Agreement with Emerald Health Sciences and Dr. Dhillon’s appointment as the Executive Chairman of the Company’s Board.

[Table of Contents](#)

On October 5, 2018, the Company entered into the Credit Agreement with Emerald Health Sciences. The Credit Agreement provides for a credit facility to the Company of up to \$20,000,000 and is unsecured. Advances under the Credit Agreement bear interest at an annual rate of 7% (payable quarterly in arrears) and mature on October 5, 2022. At Emerald Health Sciences' election, advances and unpaid interest may be converted into Common Stock at a fixed conversion price of \$0.40, subject to customary adjustments for stock splits, stock dividends, recapitalizations, etc. In connection with each advance under the Credit Agreement, the Company has agreed to issue Emerald Health Sciences warrants to purchase shares of common stock in an amount equal to 50% of the number of shares of common stock that each advance may be converted into. The warrants have an exercise price of \$0.50 per share, a term of five years and will be immediately exercisable upon issuance. The exercise price is subject to adjustment in the event of certain stock dividends and distributions, stock splits, stock combinations, reclassifications or similar events or upon any distributions of assets, including cash, stock or other property to the Company's shareholders. On November 1, 2018, the Company effected an initial draw under the Credit Agreement in the amount of \$2,000,000 and issued Emerald Health Sciences a warrant to purchase 2,500,000 shares of common stock at an exercise price of \$0.50 per share, in accordance with the terms of the Credit Agreement. On February 1, 2019, the Company effected the second draw under the Credit Agreement in the amount of \$2,000,000 and issued Emerald Health Sciences a warrant to purchase 2,500,000 shares of common stock at an exercise price of \$0.50 per share, in accordance with the terms of the Credit Agreement. On March 29, 2019, the Company effected the third draw under the Credit Agreement in the amount of \$2,000,000 and issued Emerald Health Sciences a warrant to purchase 2,500,000 shares of common stock at an exercise price of \$0.50 per share, in accordance with the terms of the Credit Agreement. We have the ability to continue borrowing under this Credit Agreement, however there is no guarantee of continued funding. A portion of the proceeds raised in this offering may be used to pay, in whole or in part, the principal and accrued interest on our Credit Agreement. See "Use of Proceeds."

The net proceeds of each advance shall be used for general corporate purposes and are subject to approval by the Company's Board, which is controlled by the directors and principal executive officer of Emerald Health Sciences.

Review, Approval and Ratification of Related Party Transactions

Given our small size and limited financial resources, we have not adopted formal policies and procedures for the review, approval or ratification of transactions, such as those described above, with our executive officers, directors and significant stockholders. However, all of the transactions described

above were approved and ratified by our Board. In connection with the approval of the transactions described above, our Board took into account several factors, including their fiduciary duties to the Company, the relationships of the related parties described above to the Company, the material facts underlying each transaction, the anticipated benefits to the Company and related costs associated with such benefits, whether comparable products or services were available, and the terms the Company could receive from an unrelated third party.

We intend to establish formal policies and procedures in the future, once we have sufficient resources and have appointed additional directors, so that such transactions will be subject to the review, approval or ratification of our Board, or an appropriate committee thereof. On a moving forward basis, our Board will continue to approve any related party transaction based on the criteria set forth above.

Conflicts Related to Other Business Activities

The persons serving as our officers and directors have existing responsibilities and, in the future, may have additional responsibilities, to provide management and services to other entities in addition to us. As a result, conflicts of interest between us and the other activities of those persons may occur from time to time.

We will attempt to resolve any such conflicts of interest in our favor. Our officers and directors are accountable to us and our shareholders as fiduciaries, which requires that such officers and directors exercise good faith and integrity in handling our affairs. A shareholder may be able to institute legal action on our behalf or on behalf of that shareholder and all other similarly situated shareholders to recover damages or for other relief in cases of the resolution of conflicts in any manner prejudicial to us.

Director Independence

We have determined that Punit Dhillon and Jim Heppell are independent members of our Board, as that term is defined in Rule 5605(a)(2) of the Nasdaq Listing Rules.

[Table of Contents](#)

Insider Trading Policy

On October 31, 2014, our Board adopted an Insider Trading Policy applicable to all directors and officers. Insider trading generally refers to the buying or selling of a security in breach of a fiduciary duty or other relationship of trust and confidence while in possession of material, non-public information about the security. Insider trading violations may also include 'tipping' such information, securities trading by the person 'tipped,' and securities trading by those who misappropriate such information. The scope of insider trading violations can be wide reaching. As such, our Board has adopted an Insider Trading Policy that outlines the definitions of insider trading, the penalties and sanctions determined, and what constitutes material, non-public information. Illegal insider trading is against our policy as such trading can cause significant harm to the reputation for integrity and ethical conduct of our company. Individuals who fail to comply with the requirements of the policy are subject to disciplinary action, at our sole discretion, including dismissal for cause. All members of our Board and all executive officers are required to ratify the terms of this policy on an annual basis. Our Insider Trading Policy is available on our website at www.emeraldbio.life.

EXPERTS

Mayer Hoffman McCann P.C., our independent registered public accounting firm, has audited our consolidated balance sheets as of December 31, 2018 and 2017, and the related consolidated statements of operations and comprehensive loss, stockholders' deficit and cash flows for each of the two years in the period ended December 31, 2018, and the related notes, as set forth in their report, which report expresses an unqualified opinion and includes an explanatory paragraph relating to our ability to continue as a going concern. Such financial statements have been included in this prospectus and in this Registration Statement in reliance on the report of Mayer Hoffman McCann P.C. given on their authority as experts in accounting and auditing.

LEGAL MATTERS

The validity of our common stock offered hereby will be passed upon for us by Greenberg Traurig, LLP.

INTERESTS OF NAMED EXPERTS AND COUNSEL

No expert or counsel named in this prospectus as having prepared or certified any part of this prospectus or having given an opinion upon the validity of the securities being registered or upon other legal matters in connection with the registration or offering of the common stock was employed for such purpose on a contingency basis, or had, or is to receive, in connection with this offering, a substantial interest, direct or indirect, in us or any of our parents or subsidiaries, nor was any such person connected with us or any of our parents or subsidiaries as a promoter, managing or principal underwriter, voting trustee, director, officer, or employee.

WHERE YOU CAN FIND ADDITIONAL INFORMATION

We file annual, quarterly and current reports, proxy statements and other information with the SEC. Such filings are available to the public over the internet at the SEC's website at <http://www.sec.gov>.

We have filed with the SEC a registration statement on Form S-1 under the Securities Act with respect to the securities offered under this prospectus. This prospectus, which forms a part of that registration statement, does not contain all information included in the registration statement. Certain information is omitted and you should refer to the registration statement and its exhibits.

You may review a copy of the registration statement at the SEC's public reference room at 100 F Street, N.E. Washington, D.C. 20549. You may obtain information on the operation of the public reference room by calling the SEC at 1-800-SEC-0330. You may also read and copy any materials we file with the SEC at the SEC's public reference room. Our filings and the registration statement can also be reviewed by accessing the SEC's website at <http://www.sec.gov>.

[Table of Contents](#)

EMERALD BIOSCIENCE, INC. AND SUBSIDIARY

INDEX TO FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

	Page No.
Audited Consolidated Financial Statements	
<u>Report of Independent Registered Public Accounting Firm</u>	F-2
<u>Consolidated Balance Sheets as of December 31, 2018 and 2017</u>	F-3
<u>Consolidated Statements of Operations for the years ended December 31, 2018 and 2017</u>	F-4
<u>Consolidated Statements of Cash Flows for the years ended December 31, 2018 and 2017</u>	F-5
<u>Consolidated Statements of Stockholders' Deficit for the years ended December 31, 2018 and 2017</u>	F-6 - F-7
<u>Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements</u>	F-8
Unaudited Condensed Consolidated Financial Statements	
<u>Condensed Consolidated Balance Sheets as of June 30, 2019 (Unaudited) and December 31, 2018</u>	F-38
<u>Condensed Consolidated Statements of Comprehensive Income (Loss) for the Three and Six Months ended June 30, 2019 and 2018 (Unaudited)</u>	F-39
<u>Condensed Consolidated Statements of Cash Flows for the Six Months ended June 30, 2019 and 2018 (Unaudited)</u>	F-40
<u>Condensed Consolidated Statements of Stockholders' Deficit for the Three Months and Six Months ended June 30, 2019 and 2018 (Unaudited)</u>	F-41 - F-42
<u>Notes to the Unaudited Condensed Consolidated Financial Statements</u>	F-43

REPORT OF INDEPENDENT REGISTERED PUBLIC ACCOUNTING FIRM

To the Board of Directors and
Stockholders of Nemus Bioscience, Inc. and Subsidiary:

Opinion on the Financial Statements

We have audited the accompanying consolidated balance sheets of Nemus Bioscience, Inc. and Subsidiary (“Company”) as of December 31, 2018 and 2017, and the related consolidated statements of operations, stockholders’ deficit, and cash flows for each of the two years in the period ended December 31, 2018, and the related notes (collectively referred to as the “financial statements”). In our opinion, the financial statements present fairly, in all material respects, the financial position of the Company as of December 31, 2018 and 2017, and the results of its operations and its cash flows for each of the two years in the period ended December 31, 2018, in conformity with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America.

Going Concern Uncertainty

The accompanying financial statements have been prepared assuming that the Company will continue as a going concern. As discussed in Note 1 to the financial statements, the Company has incurred recurring operating losses and is dependent on additional financing to fund operations. These conditions raise substantial doubt about the Company’s ability to continue as a going concern. Management’s plans in regard to these matters are described in Note 1 to the financial statements. The financial statements do not include any adjustments to reflect the possible future effects on the recoverability and classification of assets or the amounts and classification of liabilities that may result from the outcome of this uncertainty.

Basis for Opinion

These financial statements are the responsibility of the Company’s management. Our responsibility is to express an opinion on these financial statements based on our audits. We are a public accounting firm registered with the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board (United States) (“PCAOB”) and are required to be independent with respect to the Company in accordance with the U.S. federal securities laws and the applicable rules and regulations of the Securities and Exchange Commission and the PCAOB.

We conducted our audits in accordance with the standards of the PCAOB. Those standards require that we plan and perform the audits to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the financial statements are free of material misstatement, whether due to error or fraud. The Company is not required to have, nor were we engaged to perform, an audit of its internal control over financial reporting. As part of our audits we are required to obtain an understanding of internal control over financial reporting but not for the purpose of expressing an opinion on the effectiveness of the Company’s internal control over financial reporting. Accordingly, we express no such opinion.

Our audits included performing procedures to assess the risks of material misstatement of the financial statements, whether due to error or fraud, and performing procedures that respond to those risks. Such procedures included examining, on a test basis, evidence regarding the amounts and disclosures in the financial statements. Our audits also included evaluating the accounting principles used and significant estimates made by management, as well as evaluating the overall presentation of the financial statements. We believe that our audits provide a reasonable basis for our opinion.

/s/ Mayer Hoffman McCann P.C.

We have served as the Company’s auditor since 2014.

Irvine, California
March 14, 2019

[Table of Contents](#)

**NEMUS BIOSCIENCE, INC. AND SUBSIDIARY
CONSOLIDATED BALANCE SHEETS**

	December 31,	
	2018	2017
ASSETS		
Current assets		
Cash and cash equivalents	\$ 1,853,373	\$ 259,955
Restricted cash	4,512	4,428
Prepaid expenses	93,193	291,428
Other current assets	2,609	-
Total current assets	<u>1,953,687</u>	<u>555,811</u>
Property and equipment, net	<u>3,445</u>	<u>1,407</u>
Total assets	<u>\$ 1,957,132</u>	<u>\$ 557,218</u>
LIABILITIES, REDEEMABLE CONVERTIBLE PREFERRED STOCK AND STOCKHOLDERS' DEFICIT		
Current liabilities		
Accounts payable	\$ 15,597	\$ 100,921
Accrued payroll and related expenses	66,213	54,512
Accrued expenses	118,248	143,826
Derivative liabilities	15,738,913	271,715
Secured convertible promissory note - related party, net of discount	-	235,000
Total current liabilities	<u>15,938,971</u>	<u>805,974</u>
Noncurrent liabilities		
Convertible multi-draw credit agreement - related party, net of discount	1,360,960	-
Derivative liabilities, noncurrent	<u>219,453</u>	<u>551,322</u>
Total liabilities	<u>17,519,384</u>	<u>1,357,296</u>
Commitments and contingencies		
(Note 10)		
Preferred stock, \$0.001 par value; 20,000,000 shares authorized		
Redeemable Convertible Series B Preferred Stock net of \$347,091 issuance costs		
(0 and 2,833.55 issued and outstanding as of December 31, 2018 and December 31, 2017, respectively; \$2.8 million liquidation preference as of December 31, 2017)	-	822,201
Convertible Series D Preferred Stock, net of \$30,557 issuance costs		
(0 and 200 issued and outstanding as of December 31, 2018 and December 31, 2017, respectively; \$0.2 million liquidation preference as of December 31, 2017)	-	169,446
Convertible Series F Preferred Stock, net of \$118,855 issuance costs		

(0 and 2,000 issued and outstanding as of December 31, 2018 and December 31, 2017, respectively) - 1,777,781

Stockholders' deficit

Common stock, \$0.001 par value; 500,000,000 shares authorized; 133,907,747 issued and outstanding as of December 31, 2018 and 33,622,829 issued and outstanding as of December 31, 2017	133,908	33,623
Additional paid-in-capital	16,230,956	9,444,831
Warrants	1,297,991	982,911
Accumulated deficit	(33,225,107)	(14,030,871)
Total stockholders' deficit	<u>(15,562,252)</u>	<u>(3,569,506)</u>
Total liabilities and stockholders' deficit	<u>\$ 1,957,132</u>	<u>\$ 557,218</u>

See accompanying notes to the consolidated financial statements.

[Table of Contents](#)

NEMUS BIOSCIENCE, INC. AND SUBSIDIARY
CONSOLIDATED STATEMENTS OF OPERATIONS AND COMPREHENSIVE LOSS

	Year Ended December 31,	
	2018	2017
Operating expenses		
Research and development	\$ 329,966	\$ 311,302
General and administrative	4,362,557	3,547,927
Total operating expenses	<u>4,692,523</u>	<u>3,859,229</u>
Operating loss	<u>(4,692,523)</u>	<u>(3,859,229)</u>

Other expense (income)		
Change in fair value of derivative liabilities	6,503,174	(767,198)
Fair value of warrant liability in excess of proceeds	7,174,634	-
Financing transaction costs	137,192	-
Loss on extinguishment of secured convertible promissory note - related party	590,392	-
Interest expense	94,763	667
Interest income	(84)	-
	<u>(19,192,594)</u>	<u>(3,092,698)</u>
Loss before income taxes		
Provision for income taxes	1,642	1,600
	<u>(19,194,236)</u>	<u>(3,094,298)</u>
Net loss and comprehensive loss	\$ (19,194,236)	\$ (3,094,298)
Less: Preferred deemed dividend	-	1,044,000
Net loss applicable to common shareholders	<u>\$ (19,194,236)</u>	<u>\$ (4,138,298)</u>
Basic and diluted net loss per common share	<u>\$ (0.16)</u>	<u>\$ (0.11)</u>
Weighted average shares of common stock outstanding: basic and diluted	<u>121,154,334</u>	<u>27,906,090</u>

See accompanying notes to the consolidated financial statements.

[Table of Contents](#)

**NEMUS BIOSCIENCE, INC. AND SUBSIDIARY
CONSOLIDATED STATEMENTS OF CASH FLOWS**

	Year ended December 31,	
	2018	2017
Cash flows from operating activities:		
Net loss	\$ (19,194,236)	\$ (3,094,298)
Adjustments to reconcile net loss to net cash used in operating activities:		
Depreciation	1,544	8,039
Loss on disposal of assets	803	1,788
Fixed assets provided to university in lieu of cash	-	18,004
Stock-based compensation expense	674,961	608,676
Amortization of warrants and stock issued for services (1)	-	30,000
Change in fair value of derivative liabilities	6,503,174	(767,198)
Fair value of warrant liability in excess of proceeds	7,174,634	-
Financing transaction costs	137,192	-
Loss on common stock issuance from conversion of accrued interest	9,794	-
Loss on extinguishment of secured convertible promissory note - related party	590,392	-
Amortization of debt discount	58,536	-
Common stock issued for services	-	187,550
Changes in assets and liabilities:		

Prepaid expenses (1)	198,235	(121,273)
Deposits and other assets	-	34,290
Other current assets	(2,609)	7,014
Accounts payable	(85,324)	(173,729)
Accrued payroll and related expenses	11,701	(112,825)
Accrued expenses	(21,811)	42,677
Net cash used in operating activities	<u>(3,943,014)</u>	<u>(3,331,285)</u>
Cash flows from investing activities:		
Purchases of property and equipment	(4,385)	(19,654)
Net cash used in investing activities	<u>(4,385)</u>	<u>(19,654)</u>
Cash flows from financing activities:		
Proceeds from Series D preferred stock issuance, net of \$183,343 issuance costs (2)	-	1,131,857
Proceeds from Series F preferred stock issuance, net of \$118,855 issuance costs	-	1,881,145
Proceeds from Emerald Financing, net of \$154,092 issuance costs	3,095,908	-
Proceeds from Series B warrant exercises	98,700	-
Proceeds from secured convertible promissory note - related party	400,000	500,000
Proceeds from convertible multi-draw credit agreement, net of \$53,707 issuance costs	1,946,293	-
Net cash provided by financing activities	<u>5,540,901</u>	<u>3,513,002</u>
Net increase in cash, cash equivalents and restricted cash	1,593,502	162,063
Cash, cash equivalents and restricted cash, beginning of period	\$ 264,383	\$ 102,320
Cash, cash equivalents and restricted cash, end of period	\$ 1,857,885	\$ 264,383
<i>Supplemental disclosures of cash-flow information:</i>		
Reconciliation of cash, cash equivalents and restricted cash:		
Cash and cash equivalents	\$ 1,853,373	\$ 259,955
Restricted cash	4,512	4,428
Total cash, cash equivalents and restricted cash shown in the consolidated statements of cash flows	<u>\$ 1,857,885</u>	<u>\$ 264,383</u>
Cash paid during the period for:		
Interest	\$ 23,334	\$ -
Income taxes	\$ 1,642	\$ 1,631
<i>Supplemental disclosures of non-cash financing activities:</i>		
Conversion of outstanding preferred stock into common stock	\$ 1,947,228	\$ 1,386,000
Conversion of outstanding preferred stock subject to redemption into common stock	828,915	1,197,450
Fair value of common stock issued in extinguishment of convertible debt and accrued interest	1,713,766	-
Fair value of warrants issued in connection with financings	10,424,634	-
Proceeds allocated to equity classified warrants issued with convertible multi-draw credit agreement	315,080	-
Reclassification of warrant liabilities to equity from exercise of warrants	1,539,866	-
Fair value of compound derivative liability issued with convertible multi-draw credit agreement	204,102	-
Beneficial conversion feature on convertible multi-draw credit agreement	90,080	-

Supplemental disclosures of non-cash financing and investing activities:

- (1) During the year ended December 31, 2017, warrants issued to service providers for consulting services were valued at \$30,000 and were recorded as a Prepaid expense and amortized over the service period.
- (2) During the year ended December 31, 2017 preferred deemed dividends of \$333,000 was recognized on Series F Preferred Stock, \$536,000 was recognized on Series D Preferred Stock and \$175,000 on Series C Preferred Stock.

See accompanying notes to the consolidated financial statements.

[Table of Contents](#)

NEMUS BIOSCIENCE, INC. AND SUBSIDIARY
CONSOLIDATED STATEMENTS OF STOCKHOLDERS' DEFICIT

	Convertible Series F Preferred Stock		Convertible Series D Preferred Stock		Convertible Series C Preferred Stock		Redeemable Convertible Series B Preferred Stock		Common Stock		Stockholders' Deficit			Total Stockholders Deficit
	Shares	Amounts	Shares	Amounts	Shares	Amounts	Shares	Amounts	Shares	Amounts	Additional Paid-In Capital	Warrants	Accumulated Deficit	
Balance, December 31, 2016	-	\$ -	-	\$ -	386	\$ 293,669	4,031	\$ 1,169,663	21,563,163	\$ 21,563	\$ 7,163,064	\$ 837,711	\$ (10,936,573)	\$ (2,914,235)
Common stock issued for services	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	605,000	605	186,945	-	-	187,550
Common stock warrants issued for services	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	145,200	-	145,200
Stock based compensation expense	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	608,676	-	-	608,676
Issuance of Series D Preferred Stock net of issuance costs of \$183,343	-	-	1,200	1,016,657	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Issuance of Series F Preferred Stock net of issuance costs of \$118,855 and \$103,364 put option liability	2,000	1,777,781	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Conversion of Series B Preferred Stock and conversion liability into common stock at \$0.25 and \$0.15 per share	-	-	-	-	-	-	(1,197.45)	(347,462)	5,910,666	5,911	350,810	-	-	356,721
Conversion of Series C Preferred Stock to common stock at \$0.25 per share	-	-	-	-	(386)	(293,669)	-	-	1,544,000	1,544	292,125	-	-	293,669

Conversion of Series D Preferred Stock to common stock at \$0.25 per share	-	-	(1,000)	(847,210)	-	-	-	-	4,000,000	4,000	843,211	-	-	847,211
Beneficial conversion feature upon issuance of Series C Preferred Stock	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	175,000	-	-	175,000
Deemed dividend from beneficial conversion feature of Series C Preferred Stock	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	(175,000)	-	-	(175,000)
Beneficial conversion feature upon issuance of Series D Preferred Stock	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	536,000	-	-	536,000
Deemed dividend from beneficial conversion feature of Series D Preferred Stock	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	(536,000)	-	-	(536,000)

[Table of Contents](#)

Beneficial conversion feature upon issuance of Series F Preferred Stock	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	333,000	-	-	333,000
Deemed dividend from beneficial conversion feature of Series F Preferred Stock	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	(333,000)	-	-	(333,000)
Net loss for the year ended December 31, 2017	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	(3,094,298)	(3,094,298)
Balance, December 31, 2017	<u>2,000</u>	<u>\$ 1,777,781</u>	<u>200</u>	<u>\$ 169,447</u>	<u>-</u>	<u>\$ -</u>	<u>2,833.55</u>	<u>\$ 822,201</u>	<u>33,622,829</u>	<u>\$ 33,623</u>	<u>\$ 9,444,831</u>	<u>\$ 982,911</u>	<u>\$ (14,030,871)</u>	<u>\$ (3,569,506)</u>
Stock based compensation expense	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	3,143,501	3,143	671,818	-	-	674,961
Issuance of common stock net of issuance costs of \$16,900	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	32,500,000	32,500	(49,400)	-	-	(16,900)

Conversion of Series B Preferred Stock and conversion liability into common stock at \$0.10 and \$0.001 per share	-	-	-	-	-	-	(2,833.55)	(822,201)	28,385,000	28,385	800,530	-	-	828,915
Conversion of Series D Preferred Stock to common stock at \$0.10 per share	-	-	(200)	(169,447)	-	-	-	-	2,000,000	2,000	167,447	-	-	169,447
Conversion of Series F Preferred Stock to common stock at \$0.10 per share	(2,000)	(1,777,781)	-	-	-	-	-	-	20,000,000	20,000	1,757,781	-	-	1,777,781
Conversion of secured convertible promissory note - related party and accrued interest	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	9,037,667	9,038	1,714,522	-	-	1,723,560
Series B warrant exercises	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	5,218,750	5,219	1,633,347	-	-	1,638,566
Warrants issued in connection with convertible multi-draw credit agreement, related party	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	315,080	-	315,080
Beneficial conversion feature in connection with convertible multi-draw credit agreement - related party	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	90,080	-	-	90,080
Net loss for the year ended December 31, 2018	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	(19,194,236)	(19,194,236)
Balance, December 31, 2018	<u>-</u>	<u>\$ -</u>	<u>-</u>	<u>\$ -</u>	<u>-</u>	<u>\$ -</u>	<u>-</u>	<u>\$ -</u>	<u>133,907,747</u>	<u>\$ 133,908</u>	<u>\$ 16,230,956</u>	<u>\$ 1,297,991</u>	<u>\$ (33,225,107)</u>	<u>\$ (15,562,252)</u>

See accompanying notes to the consolidated financial statements.

[Table of Contents](#)

**NEMUS BIOSCIENCE, INC. AND SUBSIDIARY
NOTES TO THE CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS**

1. Nature of Operations and Business Activities

Nature of Operations

Nemus Bioscience, Inc. is a biopharmaceutical company that plans to research, develop and commercialize therapeutics derived from cannabinoids through a number of license agreements with the University of Mississippi (“UM”). UM is the only entity federally permitted and licensed to cultivate cannabis for research purposes in the United States. Unless otherwise specified, references in these Notes to the Consolidated Financial Statements to the “Company,” “we” or “our” refer to Nemus Bioscience, Inc., a Nevada corporation formerly known as Load Guard Logistics, Inc. (“LGL”), together with its wholly-owned subsidiary, Nemus, a California corporation (“Nemus”). Nemus became the wholly owned subsidiary of Nemus Bioscience, Inc. through the Merger (as defined below).

Nemus Bioscience, Inc. (formerly LGL) was incorporated in Nevada on March 16, 2011. The wholly-owned subsidiary of Nemus Bioscience, Inc., Nemus, was incorporated in California on July 17, 2012. Our headquarters are located in Long Beach, California.

In January 2018, the Company entered into a securities purchase agreement with Emerald Health Sciences, Inc. (“Emerald”) discussed in Note 5, pursuant to which Emerald purchased a majority of the equity interest in Nemus resulting in a change in control. As part of the transaction, the Company’s Board members, with the exception of Dr. Brian Murphy, the Company’s CEO/CMO, tendered their resignation and Emerald appointed two new nominees to the Board. Later, in October 2018, the Board appointed Dr. Avtar Dhillon, the Chairman, Chief Executive Officer and President of Emerald, as the Executive Chairman of the Company’s Board of Directors.

As of December 31, 2018, the Company has devoted substantially all of its efforts to securing product licenses, carrying out research and development, building infrastructure and raising capital. The Company has not yet realized revenue from its planned principal operations and is a number of years from potentially being able to do so.

Liquidity and Going Concern

The Company has incurred operating losses and negative cash flows from operations since inception and as of December 31, 2018, had an accumulated deficit of \$33,225,107, a stockholders’ deficit of \$15,562,252 and a working capital deficit of \$13,985,284. The Company anticipates that it will continue to incur net losses into the foreseeable future in order to advance and develop a number of potential drug candidates into preclinical and clinical development activities and support its corporate infrastructure which includes the costs associated with being a public company. As of December 31, 2018, the Company had cash and cash equivalents of \$1,853,373, as compared to \$259,955 of cash and cash equivalents as of December 31, 2017. This increase is primarily attributable to the proceeds of \$2,000,000 from the Multi-Draw Credit Agreement with Emerald, \$3,250,000 from the Emerald Financing (defined below) along with \$400,000 of the \$900,000 Secured Convertible Promissory Note from Emerald. However, without additional funding management believes that the Company will not have sufficient funds to meet its obligations within one year from the date the Consolidated Financial Statements are issued. These conditions give rise to substantial doubt as to the Company’s ability to continue as a going concern. The accompanying Consolidated Financial Statements do not include any adjustments that might result from the outcome of this uncertainty.

The Company’s continued existence is dependent on its ability to raise additional sufficient funding to cover operating expenses and to invest in operations and development activities. On October 5, 2018, the Company entered into a Multi-Draw Credit Agreement (the “Credit Agreement”) with Emerald (Note 4). Under the Credit Agreement the Company is able to draw down up to \$20,000,000 from time to time in principal amounts of at least \$250,000. The drawdowns are subject to approval by the Company’s Board of Directors, which is controlled by the directors and principal executive officer of Emerald.

[Table of Contents](#)

The Company plans to continue to pursue funding through public or private equity or debt financings, licensing arrangements, asset sales, government grants or other arrangements. However, the Company cannot provide any assurances that such additional funds will be available on reasonable terms, or at all. If the Company raises additional funds by issuing equity securities, substantial dilution to existing stockholders would result. If the Company is unable to secure adequate additional funding, the Company may be forced to reduce spending, extend payment terms with suppliers, liquidate assets where possible, suspend or curtail planned programs or cease operations.

2. Summary of Significant Accounting Policies

Basis of Presentation

The preparation of financial statements in conformity with Generally Accepted Accounting Principles (“GAAP”) requires management to make estimates and assumptions that affect the amounts reported in the Consolidated Financial Statements and the accompanying notes. Actual results could differ from those estimates. Certain reclassifications have been made to prior year amounts to conform to the current year’s presentation. Such reclassifications had no net effect on previously reported financial results.

Use of Estimates

The preparation of the Consolidated Financial Statements in conformity with GAAP requires management to make estimates and assumptions that affect the reported amounts of assets and liabilities and disclosure of contingent assets and liabilities at the date of the Consolidated Financial Statements and the reported amounts of revenue and expense during the reporting period. Actual results could differ from those estimates. The most significant accounting estimates inherent in the preparation of our financial statements include estimates as to the appropriate carrying value of certain assets and liabilities which are not readily apparent from other sources. Such estimates and judgments are utilized for stock-based compensation expense and equity securities or debt with embedded features.

Risks and Uncertainties

The Company’s operations are subject to a number of risks and uncertainties, including but not limited to, changes in the general economy, the size and growth of the potential markets for any of the Company’s product candidates, results of research and development activities, uncertainties surrounding regulatory developments in the United States and the Company’s ability to attract new funding.

Cash and Cash Equivalents

The Company considers all highly liquid investments purchased with an original maturity of three months or less to be cash equivalents. The carrying value of those investments approximates their fair market value due to their short maturity and liquidity. Cash and cash equivalents include cash on hand and amounts on deposit with financial institutions, which amounts may at times exceed federally insured limits. The Company has not experienced any losses on such accounts and does not believe it is exposed to any significant credit risk. As of December 31, 2018, the Company has no cash equivalents.

Restricted Cash

A deposit of \$4,512 and \$4,428 as of December 31, 2018 and December 31, 2017, respectively, was restricted from withdrawal and held by a bank in the form of a certificate of deposit. This certificate serves as collateral for payment of the Company’s credit cards.

[Table of Contents](#)

Fair Value Measurements

Certain assets and liabilities are carried at fair value under GAAP. Fair value is defined as the exchange price that would be received for an asset or paid to transfer a liability (the “exit price”) in the principal or most advantageous market for the asset or liability in an orderly transaction between market participants on the measurement date. Valuation techniques used to measure fair value must maximize the use of observable inputs and minimize the use of unobservable inputs. A fair value hierarchy based on three levels of inputs, of which the first two are considered observable and the last is considered unobservable, is used to measure fair value:

- Level 1: Valuations for assets and liabilities traded in active markets from readily available pricing sources such as quoted prices in active markets for identical assets or liabilities.
- Level 2: Observable inputs (other than Level 1 quoted prices) such as quoted prices in active markets for similar assets or liabilities, quoted prices in markets that are not active for identical or similar assets or liabilities, or other inputs that are observable or can be corroborated by observable market data.
- Level 3: Unobservable inputs that are supported by little or no market activity and that are significant to determining the fair value of the assets or liabilities, including pricing models, discounted cash flow methodologies and similar techniques.

The carrying values of our financial instruments, with the exception of the convertible multi-draw credit agreement – related party, noncurrent and derivative liabilities, including, cash and cash equivalents, prepaid expenses, accounts payable, and accrued expenses approximate their fair value due to the short maturities of these financial instruments. The derivative liabilities were valued on a recurring basis utilizing Level 3 inputs.

Advances under the convertible multi-draw credit agreement – related party, noncurrent are not recorded at fair value. However, fair value can be approximated and disclosed utilizing Level 3 inputs and independent third-party valuation techniques (See Note 3). At December 31, 2018, the fair value of the advance under the Credit Agreement was estimated at \$3,176,824.

Property and Equipment, Net

Property and equipment, net, consists primarily of computers and equipment. Expenditures for additions, renewals and improvements are capitalized at cost. Depreciation is computed on a straight-line method based on the estimated useful life of the related asset currently ranging from two to three years. Maintenance and repairs that do not extend the life of assets are charged to expense when incurred. When properties are disposed of, the related costs and accumulated depreciation are removed from the accounts and any gain or loss is reported in the period the transaction takes place.

Property and equipment are reviewed for impairment whenever events or changes in circumstances indicate the carrying amount of an asset may not be recoverable. Recoverability of assets to be held and used is measured by a comparison of the carrying amount of an asset to estimated undiscounted cash flows expected to be generated by the asset. If the carrying amount exceeds its estimated future undiscounted cash flows, an impairment charge is recognized by the amount by which the carrying amount exceeds the fair value of the asset.

Income Taxes

The Company accounts for deferred income tax assets and liabilities based on differences between the financial reporting and tax bases of assets and liabilities, and net operating loss carry forwards (the “NOLs”) and other tax credit carry forwards. These items are measured using the enacted tax rates and laws that will be in effect when the differences are expected to reverse. The effect of a change in tax rates on deferred tax assets and liabilities is recognized in the period that includes the enactment date. Any interest or penalties would be recorded in the Company’s statement of operations in the period incurred.

The Company records a valuation allowance against deferred tax assets to the extent that it is more likely than not that some portion, or all of, the deferred tax assets will not be realized. In making such determinations, management considers all available positive and negative evidence, including scheduled reversals of deferred tax liabilities, projected future taxable income, tax planning strategies and recent financial operations. Due to the substantial doubt related to the Company’s ability to utilize its deferred tax assets, a valuation allowance for the full amount of the deferred tax assets has been established at December 31, 2018. As a result of this valuation allowance there are no income tax benefits reflected in the accompanying Consolidated Statements of Operations and Comprehensive Loss to offset pre-tax losses.

The Company recognizes a tax benefit from uncertain tax positions when it is more likely than not (50%) that the position will be sustained upon examination, including resolutions of any related appeals or litigation processes, based on the technical merits of the position. The Company has no material uncertain tax positions as of December 31, 2018.

The Company recognizes interest and/or penalties related to income tax matters in income tax expense.

Convertible Instruments

The Company accounts for hybrid contracts with embedded conversion features in accordance with GAAP. ASC 815, *Derivatives and Hedging Activities* ("ASC 815") requires companies to bifurcate conversion options from their host instruments and account for them as free standing derivative financial instruments according to certain criteria. The criteria includes circumstances in which (a) the economic characteristics and risks of the embedded derivative instrument are not clearly and closely related to the economic characteristics and risks of the host contract, (b) the hybrid instrument that embodies both the embedded derivative instrument and the host contract is not re-measured at fair value under otherwise applicable generally accepted accounting principles with changes in fair value reported in earnings as they occur and (c) a separate instrument with the same terms as the embedded derivative instrument would be considered a derivative instrument.

The Company accounts for convertible debt instruments with embedded conversion features in accordance with ASC 470-20 *Debt with Conversion and Other Options* ("ASC 470-20") if it's determined that the conversion feature should not be bifurcated from their host instruments. Under ASC 470-20, the Company records, when necessary, discounts to convertible notes for the intrinsic value of conversion options embedded in debt instruments based upon the difference between the fair value of the underlying common stock at the commitment date and the embedded effective conversion price. When the Company determines that the embedded conversion option should be bifurcated from its host instrument, the embedded feature is accounted for in accordance with ASC 815. Under ASC 815, a portion of the proceeds received upon the issuance of the hybrid contract is allocated to the fair value of the derivative. The derivative is subsequently marked to market at each reporting date based on current fair value, with the changes in fair value reported in results of operations.

The Company also follows ASC 480-10, *Distinguishing Liabilities from Equity* ("ASC 480-10") when evaluating the accounting for its hybrid instruments. A financial instrument that embodies an unconditional obligation, or a financial instrument other than an outstanding share that embodies a conditional obligation, that the issuer must or may settle by issuing a variable number of its equity shares shall be classified as a liability (or an asset in some circumstances) if, at inception, the monetary value of the obligation is based solely or predominantly on any one of the following: (a) a fixed monetary amount known at inception (for example, a payable settled with a variable number of the issuer's equity shares); (b) variations in something other than the fair value of the issuer's equity shares (for example, a financial instrument indexed to the Standard and Poor's S&P 500 Index and settled with a variable number of the issuer's equity shares); or (c) variations inversely related to changes in the fair value of the issuer's equity shares (for example, a written put option that could be net share settled). Hybrid instruments meeting these criteria are not further evaluated for any embedded derivatives and are carried as a liability at fair value at each balance sheet date with a re-measurement reported other (income) expense in the accompanying Consolidated Statements of Operations and Comprehensive Loss.

When determining short-term vs. long-term classification of derivative liabilities, the Company first evaluates the instruments' exercise provisions. Generally, if a derivative is a liability and exercisable within one year, it will be classified as short-term. However, because of the unique provisions and circumstances that may impact the accounting for derivative instruments, the Company carefully evaluates all factors that could potentially restrict the instrument from being exercised or create a situation where exercise would be considered remote. The Company re-evaluates its derivative liabilities at each reporting period end and makes updates for any changes in facts and circumstances that may impact classification.

[Table of Contents](#)

Warrants Issued in Connection with Financings

The Company generally accounts for warrants issued in connection with debt and equity financings as a component of equity, unless the warrants include a conditional obligation to issue a variable number of shares or there is a deemed possibility that the Company may need to settle the warrants in cash. For warrants issued with a conditional obligation to issue a variable number of shares or the deemed possibility of a cash settlement, the Company records the fair value of the warrants as a liability at each balance sheet date and records changes in fair value in other (income) expense in the Consolidated Statements of Operations and Comprehensive Loss.

Debt Issuance Costs and Interest

Discounts related to bifurcated derivatives, freestanding instruments issued in bundled transactions and issuance costs are recorded as a reduction to the carrying value of the debt and amortized over the life of the debt using the effective interest method. The Company makes changes to the effective interest rate, as necessary, on a prospective basis. For debt facilities that provide for multiple advances, the Company initially defers any issuance costs until the first advance is made and then amortizes the costs over the life of the facility.

Revenue Recognition

The Company has not begun planned principal operations and has not generated any revenue since inception.

Research and Development Expenses and Licensed Technology

Research and development (“R&D”) costs are expensed when incurred. These costs may consist of external research and development expenses incurred under agreements with third-party contract research organizations and investigative sites, third-party manufacturing organizations and consultants; license fees; employee-related expenses, which include salaries and benefits for the personnel involved in our preclinical and clinical drug development activities; and facilities expense, depreciation and other allocated expenses; and equipment and laboratory supplies.

Costs incurred for the rights to use licensed technologies in the research and development process, including licensing fees and milestone payments, are charged to research and development expense as incurred in situations where the Company has not identified an alternative future use for the acquired rights, and are capitalized in situations where there is an identified alternative future use. No cost associated with the use of licensed technologies has been capitalized to date.

Stock-Based Compensation for Employees

Stock-based compensation cost is estimated at the grant date based on the fair value of the award, and the cost is recognized as expense ratably over the vesting period with forfeitures accounted for as they occur. The Company uses the Black-Scholes Merton option pricing model for estimating the grant date fair value of stock options using the following assumptions:

- Volatility - Stock price volatility is estimated over the expected term based on a blended rate of industry peers and the Company’s actual stock volatility adjusted for periods in which significant financial variability was identified.

- Expected term - The expected term is based on a simplified method which defines the life as the weighted average of the contractual term of the options and the vesting period for each award.
- Risk-free rate - The risk-free interest rate for the expected term of the option is based on the average market rate on U.S. treasury securities in effect during the period in which the awards were granted.
- Dividends - The dividend yield assumption is based on our history and expectation of paying no dividends in the foreseeable future.

[Table of Contents](#)

Stock-Based Compensation for Non-Employees

Upon the adoption of ASU 2018-07, *Compensation—Stock Compensation (Topic 718): Improvements to Nonemployee Share-Based Payment Accounting*, during the quarter ended June 30, 2018, the Company also accounts for stock-based compensation awards issued to non-employees under Financial Accounting Standards Board (“FASB”) Accounting Standards Codification (“ASC”) No. 718-10, *Compensation – Stock Compensation – Overall*, and uses the Black-Scholes Merton option-pricing model to determine the fair value of such awards. The Company values awards issued to non-employees on the grant date and has elected to estimate forfeitures as they occur and uses the simplified method to estimate the term of such awards. The Company

recognizes stock-based compensation expense related to non-employee awards on a straight-line basis over the service period.

Segment Information

FASB ASC No. 280, *Segment Reporting*, establishes standards for reporting information about reportable segments. Operating segments are defined as components of an enterprise for which separate financial information is available. Based on the early development stage of our operations, we operate in a single reportable segment.

Comprehensive Loss

Comprehensive loss is defined as the change in equity during a period from transactions and other events and circumstances from non-owner sources. ASC 220 requires that an entity records all components of comprehensive loss, net of their related tax effects, in its financial statements in the period in which they are recognized. For the years ended December 31, 2018 and 2017, the comprehensive loss was equal to the net loss.

Net Loss Per Share of Common Stock

The Company applies FASB ASC No. 260, *Earnings per Share*. Basic net loss per share of common stock is computed by dividing loss available to common stockholders by the weighted-average number of shares of common stock outstanding for the period. The diluted net loss per share of common stock is computed by giving effect to all potential common stock equivalents outstanding for the period determined using the treasury stock method. For purposes of this calculation, convertible preferred stock, options to purchase common stock, restricted stock subject to vesting, warrants to purchase common stock and common shares underlying convertible debt instruments were considered to be common stock equivalents. In periods with a reported net loss, such common stock equivalents are excluded from the calculation of diluted net loss per share of common stock if their effect is antidilutive. For additional information regarding the net loss per share, see Note 7 “Net Loss per Share of Common Stock.”

Recent Accounting Pronouncements

In February 2016, the FASB issued ASU No. 2016-02 *Leases* (Topic 842). In January, July and December 2018, and in March 2019, the FASB issued additional amendments to the new lease guidance relating to, transition, and clarification. This ASU requires most lessees to recognize right of use assets and lease liabilities and recognize expenses in a manner similar to current accounting standards. For public companies, the standard is effective for fiscal years beginning after December 15, 2018 and interim periods therein. The Company will adopt the ASU on the effective date of January 1, 2019 and pursuant to ASU 2018-11, issued in July 2018. The Company will elect to use the effective date as of the date of application for transition. The Company is substantially complete with its evaluation of the new standard as it relates to its leases. The remaining steps in the implementation process include the review and evaluation of disclosures and presentation in the Company’s financial statements. Based on the Company’s preliminary findings there will be no cumulative effect from adoption recorded to the accumulated deficit, as it has no lease terms in excess of one year. The Company will elect the short-term lease practical expedient under the ASU which will result in no change to the current recognition accounting under ASC 840.

[Table of Contents](#)

In July 2017, the FASB issued ASU 2017-11, *Earnings Per Share (Topic 260), Distinguishing Liabilities from Equity (Topic 480) and Derivatives and Hedging (Topic 815): I. Accounting for Certain Financial Instruments with Down Round Features; II. Replacement of the Indefinite Deferral for Mandatorily Redeemable Financial Instruments of Certain Nonpublic Entities and Certain Mandatorily Redeemable Noncontrolling Interests with a Scope Exception*, (ASU 2017-11). Part I of this update addresses the complexity of accounting for certain financial instruments with down round features. Down round features are features of certain equity-linked instruments (or embedded features) that result in the strike price being reduced on the basis of the pricing of future equity offerings. Current accounting guidance creates cost and complexity for entities that issue financial instruments (such as warrants and convertible instruments) with down round features that require fair value measurement of the entire instrument or conversion option. Part II of this update addresses the difficulty of navigating *Topic 480, Distinguishing Liabilities from Equity*, because of the existence of extensive pending content in the FASB Accounting Standards Codification. This pending content is the result of the indefinite deferral of accounting requirements about mandatorily redeemable financial instruments of certain nonpublic entities and certain mandatorily redeemable non-controlling interests. The amendments in Part II of this update do not have an accounting effect. This ASU is effective for fiscal years, and interim periods within those years, beginning after December 15, 2018. The outstanding Warrants issued to Emerald contain a down-round provision. However, in the absence of the down-round these warrants would require liability accounting and be considered derivatives due to the presence of a put option (see Note 3). As such, the adoption of ASU 2017-11 is not currently expected to have a material impact on its financial statements and related disclosures.

In November 2018, the FASB issued ASU No. 2018-08 *Collaborative Arrangements* (Topic 808) intended to improve financial reporting around collaborative arrangements and align the current guidance under ASC 808 with ASC 606 *Revenue from Contracts with Customers*. The ASU affects all companies that enter into collaborative arrangements. The ASU clarifies when certain transactions between collaborative arrangement participants should be accounted for as revenue under Topic 606 and changes certain presentation requirements for transactions with a collaborative arrangement participants that are not directly related to sales to third parties. For public companies, the standard is effective for fiscal years beginning after December 15, 2019 and interim periods therein. Earlier adoption is permitted for any annual or interim period for which consolidated financial statements have not yet been issued. The Company has not entered into any collaborative arrangements and therefore does not currently expect the adoption of this standard to have a material effect on its Consolidated Financial Statements. The Company plans to adopt this ASU either on the effective date of January 1, 2020 or possibly in an earlier period if a collaborative arrangement is entered. Upon adoption, the Company will utilize the retrospective transition approach, as prescribed within this ASU.

Recently Adopted Accounting Standards

In August 2018, the FASB issued ASU No. 2018-13 *Fair Value Measurement* (Topic 820) intended to improve the effectiveness of disclosures around fair value measurements in the notes to financial statements. The ASU affects all entities that are required to make disclosures about recurring or nonrecurring fair value measurements. The amendments in this Update modify the disclosure requirements on fair value measurements in Topic 820, *Fair Value Measurement*, based on the concepts in the Concepts Statement, including the consideration of costs and benefits. For all entities, the standard is effective for fiscal years beginning after December 15, 2019, and interim periods therein. Early adoption is permitted upon the issuance of the Update and entities are permitted to early adopt any removed or modified disclosures upon issuance of this Update and delay adoption of the additional disclosures until their effective date. The Company has early adopted part of this ASU upon issuance and revised its disclosures as of the September 30, 2018

reporting period to omit the disclosures removed by this ASU on a retrospective basis. Those disclosures include; 1. the amount of and reasons for transfers between Level 1 and Level 2 of the fair value hierarchy, 2. the policy for timing of transfers between levels, and 3. the valuation processes for Level 3 fair value measurements. The Company has elected to delay adoption of the additional disclosures required by the ASU, which include the range and weighted average of significant unobservable inputs used to develop Level 3 fair value measurements, and the narrative description of measurement uncertainty until their effective date. Once this ASU is effective, the additional disclosures will be made on a prospective basis in the notes to the financial statements. The adoption of this guidance does not have a material impact to the Company's disclosures in the notes to its financial statements and has no impact on the Company's Consolidated Financial Statements.

[Table of Contents](#)

In July 2018, the FASB issued ASU 2018-07, *Compensation—Stock Compensation (Topic 718): Improvements to Nonemployee Share-Based Payment Accounting*. This update addresses several aspects of the accounting for nonemployee share-based payment transactions and expands the scope of ASC 718 to include share-based payment transactions for acquiring goods and services from nonemployees. The main provisions of the update change the way nonemployee awards are measured in the financial statements. Under the simplified standards, nonemployee options will be valued once at the date of grant, as compared to at each reporting period end under ASC 505-50. At adoption, all awards without established measurement dates will be revalued one final time, and a cumulative effect adjustment to retained earnings will be recorded as the difference between the pre-adoption value and new value. Companies will be permitted to make elections to establish the expected term and either recognize forfeitures as they occur or apply a forfeiture rate.

Compensation expense recognition using a graded vesting schedule will no longer be permitted. This pending content is the result of the FASB's Simplification Initiative, to maintain or improve the usefulness of the information provided to the users of financial statements while reducing cost and complexity in financial reporting. This ASU is effective for fiscal years, and interim periods within those years, beginning after December 15, 2018. Early adoption is permitted, but no earlier than an entity's adoption date of Topic 606. The Company early adopted this standard during the interim period ended June 30, 2018. Because the Company does not currently have any outstanding awards to non-employees for which a measurement date has not been established the adoption of ASU 2018-07 does not have a material impact to the Company's financial statements and related disclosures upon adoption. The adoption of this standard will change the way that the Company accounts for non-employee compensation in the future.

In May 2017, the FASB issued ASU 2017-09, *Compensation - Stock Compensation (Topic 718): Scope of Modification Accounting*, to clarify which changes to the terms or conditions of a share-based payment award require an entity to apply modification accounting under ASC 718. Under the new guidance, an entity will not apply modification accounting to a share-based payment award if all of the following remain unchanged immediately before and after the change of terms and conditions:

- The award's fair value (or calculated value or intrinsic value, if those measurement methods are used),
- The award's vesting conditions, and
- The award's classification as an equity or liability instrument.

ASU 2017-09 is effective for annual periods, and interim periods within those annual periods, beginning after December 15, 2017 for all entities. Early adoption is permitted, including adoption in any interim period for which financial statements have not yet been issued or made available for issuance. The ASU will be applied prospectively to awards modified on or after the adoption date. The adoption of ASU 2017-09 effective January 1, 2018 did not have a material effect on the Company's results of operations, financial condition or cash flows.

In May 2014, the FASB issued ASU No. 2014-09, *Revenue from Contracts with Customers (Topic 606)*, to provide guidance on revenue recognition. In August 2015 and March, April, May and December 2016, the FASB issued additional amendments to the new revenue guidance relating to reporting revenue on a gross versus net basis, identifying performance obligations, licensing arrangements, collectability, noncash consideration, presentation of sales tax, transition, and clarifying examples. Collectively these are referred to as ASC Topic 606, which replaces all legacy GAAP guidance on revenue recognition and eliminates all industry-specific guidance. The new revenue recognition guidance provides a unified model to determine how revenue is recognized. The core principal of the guidance is that an entity should recognize revenue when it transfers promised goods or services to customers in an amount that reflects the consideration to which the company expects to be entitled in exchange for those goods or services. In applying ASC Topic 606, companies need to use more judgment and make more estimates than under legacy guidance. This includes identifying performance obligations in the contract, estimating the amount of variable consideration to include in the transaction price and allocating the transaction price to each distinct performance obligation. ASC Topic 606 was effective for interim and annual reporting periods beginning after December 15, 2017, with early adoption permitted one year earlier.

The Company adopted the new standard effective January 1, 2018 under the modified retrospective transition method, applying the new guidance to the most current period presented. Since the Company has not yet generated revenues the adoption of the new standard resulted in no cumulative effect to the opening accumulated deficit balance. However, the adoption of this standard will impact the Company's revenue recognition if revenue is generated in future periods.

In November 2016, the FASB issued ASU No. 2016-18, *Statement of Cash Flows (Topic 230): Restricted Cash*. ASU No. 2016-18 is intended to reduce diversity in practice in the classification and presentation of changes in restricted cash on the Consolidated Statement of Cash Flows. The ASU requires that the Consolidated Statement of Cash Flows explain the change in total cash and equivalents and amounts generally described as restricted cash or restricted cash equivalents when reconciling the beginning-of-period and end-of-period total amounts. The ASU also requires a reconciliation between the total of cash and equivalents and restricted cash presented on the Consolidated Statements of Cash Flows and the cash and equivalents balance presented on the Consolidated Balance Sheets. The Company adopted ASU No. 2016-18, and the guidance has been retrospectively applied to all periods presented. The adoption of the guidance did not have an impact on the Company's Consolidated Balance Sheets or Statements of Operations and Comprehensive Loss.

[Table of Contents](#)

In August 2016, the FASB issued ASU No. 2016-15, *Statement of Cash Flows (Topic 230): Classification of Certain Cash Receipts and Cash Payments*, addressing eight specific cash flow issues in an effort to reduce diversity in practice. The amended guidance is effective for fiscal years beginning after December 15, 2017, and for interim periods within those years. The adoption of ASU 2016-15 effective January 1, 2018 did not have a material impact on the Company's Consolidated Statements of Cash Flows.

3. Warrants and Derivative Liabilities

Warrants

There are significant judgments and estimates inherent in the determination of the fair value of the Company's warrants. These judgments and estimates included the assumptions regarding its future operating performance, the time to completing a liquidity event and the determination of the appropriate valuation methods. If the Company had made different assumptions, the fair value of the warrants could have been significantly different (See Note 2).

Warrants vested and outstanding as of December 31, 2018 are summarized as follows:

Source	Exercise Price	Term (Years)	Amount Vested and Outstanding
Pre 2015 Common Stock Warrants	\$ 1.00	6-10	4,000,000
2015 Common Stock Warrants	\$ 1.15-\$5.00	5-10	442,000
2015 Series B Financing			
Common Stock Warrants to Series B Stockholders	\$ 0.00	5	1,031,250
Placement Agent Warrants	\$ 0.00	5	187,500
2016 Common Stock Warrants to Service Providers	\$ 1.15	10	40,000
2016 Series C Common Stock Warrants to Placement Agent	\$ 0.40	5	125,000
2017 Series D Common Stock Warrants to Placement Agent	\$ 0.25	5	480,000
2017 Common Stock Warrants to Service Provider	\$ 0.41	5	125,000
2018 Emerald Financing Warrants	\$ 0.10	5	44,200,000
2018 Emerald Multi-Draw Credit Agreement Warrants	\$ 0.50	5	2,500,000
Total warrants vested and outstanding as of December 31, 2018			53,130,750

Emerald Multi-Draw Credit Agreement Warrants

On November 1, 2018, the Company issued 2,500,000 fully vested common stock warrants to Emerald, in conjunction with the first advance on the Credit Agreement discussed below (See Note 4). The warrants are equity classified at issuance and the Company allocated \$315,080 of the gross proceeds to the warrants on a relative fair value basis. The proceeds allocated to the warrants was recorded as a discount to the November 1, 2018 advance and will be amortized over the term of the debt. The warrants vested immediately and had an estimated fair value of \$593,629 utilizing the Black-Scholes option pricing model with the following assumptions:

	At Issuance
Dividend yield	0.00%
Volatility factor	92.50%
Risk-free interest rate	2.96%
Expected term (years)	5.0
Underlying common stock price	\$ 0.36

2018 Emerald Financing Warrants

In January and February 2018, the Company issued an aggregate of 40,800,000 and 3,400,000 fully vested common stock warrants to Emerald and an accredited investor, respectively, in conjunction with the Emerald Financing discussed below (See Note 5). The Company reviewed the warrants for liability or equity classification under the guidance of ASC 480-10, *Distinguishing Liabilities from Equity*, and concluded that these warrants should be classified as liabilities. See additional discussion below, *Derivative Liabilities- Emerald Warrant Liability*.

2017 Series D Placement Agent Warrants

In January 2017, the Company issued 480,000 warrants to purchase common stock to its investment banker in exchange for services rendered in conjunction with the Series D Preferred Stock financing. The warrants vested immediately and had an estimated fair value of \$115,200 utilizing the Black-Scholes option pricing model, this amount was recorded to issuance costs for the year ended December 31, 2017.

2017 Common Stock Warrants to Service Provider

In February 2017, the Company entered into an agreement with one of its investors to provide advisory services on all matters including financing in exchange for 125,000 common stock warrants. The warrants vested immediately and had an estimated fair value of \$30,000 utilizing the Black-Scholes option pricing model, this amount was recorded to general and administrative expense during the year ended December 31, 2017.

Derivative Liabilities

The following tables summarize the activity of derivative liabilities for the periods indicated:

	Year Ended December 31, 2018				December 31, 2018, Fair Value of Derivative Liabilities
	December 31, 2017, Fair Value of Derivative Liabilities	Fair Value of Derivative Liabilities Issued	Change in Fair value of Derivative Liabilities*	Reclassification of Derivatives to Equity	
Emerald Multi-Draw Credit Agreement - compound derivative liability (1)	\$ -	\$ 204,102	\$ 15,351	\$ -	\$ 219,453
Emerald Financing - warrant liability (2)	-	10,424,634	4,826,779	-	15,251,413
Series B - warrant liability (3)	551,322	-	1,476,044	(1,539,866)	487,500
Emerald Convertible Promissory Note - conversion liability (4)	265,000	360,000	185,000	(810,000)	-
Series B Preferred Stock - conversion liability (5)	6,715	-	-	(6,715)	-
Total current derivative liabilities	\$ 823,037	\$ 10,988,736	\$ 6,503,174	\$ (2,356,581)	\$ 15,958,366
Less, noncurrent portion of derivative liabilities					(219,453)
Current balance of derivative liabilities					\$ 15,738,913

[Table of Contents](#)

	Year Ended December 31, 2017				
	December 31, 2016, Fair Value of Derivative Liabilities	Fair Value of Derivative Liabilities Issued	Change in Fair value of Derivative Liabilities	Reclassification of Derivatives to Equity	December 31, 2017, Fair Value of Derivative Liabilities
Series B - warrant liability (3)	\$ 1,112,308	\$ -	\$ (560,986)	\$ -	\$ 551,322
Emerald Convertible Promissory Note - conversion liability (4)	-	265,000	-	-	265,000
Series B Preferred Stock - conversion liability (5)	118,821	-	(102,848)	(9,258)	6,715
Series F Preferred Stock - put option liability (6)	-	103,364	(103,364)	-	-
Total derivative liabilities	\$ 1,231,129	\$ 368,364	\$ (767,198)	\$ (9,258)	\$ 823,037
Less, noncurrent portion of derivative liabilities					(551,322)
Current balance of derivative liabilities					\$ 271,715

**The change in fair value of derivative liabilities for the year ended December 31, 2018, relate partially to the Company determining it now has sufficient trading activity to utilize the actual volatility of the trading of the Company's common stock as an input to the volatility assumption when computing the fair value of derivative liabilities. The volatility assumption was updated as of October 1, 2018 to incorporate the Company's own volatility with six similar companies to develop a blended average. The Company had previously estimated the volatility assumption by averaging the volatility of six similar entities which had resulted in a lower volatility. The increase in value of the volatility assumption has led to a higher valuation of the derivative liabilities as disclosed below.*

Emerald Multi-Draw Credit Agreement Compound Derivative Liability (1)

On November 1, 2018, in connection with the first advance under the Multi-Draw Credit Agreement (See Note 4), the Company bifurcated a compound derivative liability related to a contingent interest feature and acceleration upon default provision (contingent put option) provided to Emerald. The Company's estimate of fair value of the compound derivative liability was determined by using a differential cash flows valuation model, wherein the fair value of the underlying debt facility and its conversion right are estimated both with and without the presence of the contingent interest feature, holding all other assumptions constant. The resulting difference between the estimated fair values in both scenarios is the estimated fair value of the compound derivative. The fair value of the underlying debt facility is estimated by calculating the expected cash flows with consideration of the estimated probability of a change in control transaction, defined as an event of default by the agreement, and applying the expected default interest rate from the date of such default through maturity. The expected cash flows are then discounted back to the reporting date using a benchmark market yield. The conversion right component of the compound derivative is measured using a standard Black-Scholes model for each payment period. Because Emerald would forgo the contingent interest if the contingent put option was exercised upon an event of default, the value ascribed to the contingent put option within the compound derivative is de minimis.

Emerald Financing Warrant Liability (2)

In January and February 2018, the Company issued 44,200,000 warrants to purchase common stock in conjunction with the Emerald Financing discussed above. The warrants vest immediately and have an exercise price of \$0.10 per share with a term of five years and are exercisable in cash or through a cashless exercise provision. The warrants contain an anti-dilution protection feature provided to the investors if the Company subsequently issues or sells any shares of common stock, stock options, or convertible securities at a price less than the exercise price of \$0.10. The exercise price is automatically adjusted down to the price of the instrument being issued. In addition, the warrants contain a contingent put option in the event that the Company undergoes a subsequent financing that results in a change in control. The warrant holders also have the right to participate in subsequent financing transactions on an as-if converted basis.

The Company reviewed the warrants for liability or equity classification under the guidance of ASC 480-10, *Distinguishing Liabilities from Equity*, and concluded that the warrants should be classified as a liability and re-measured to fair value at the end of each reporting period. The Company also reviewed the warrants under ASC 815 *Derivatives and Hedging/Contracts in Entity's Own Equity* and determined that the Warrants also meet the definition of a derivative. With the assistance of a third-party valuation specialist, the Company valued the warrant liabilities utilizing the Monte Carlo valuation method pursuant to the accounting guidance of ASC 820-10, *Fair Value Measurements*. On the closing dates, the Company estimated that the fair value of the warrants issued on January 19, 2018 and February 16, 2018 was \$4.7 million and \$5.7 million, respectively.

[Table of Contents](#)

The warrant liabilities have been valued using Monte Carlo simulations conducted at the closing dates of January 19, 2018 and February 16, 2018 and at December 31, 2018 using the following assumptions:

	December 31, 2018	At issuance
Dividend yield	0.00%	0.00%
Volatility factor	92.1-92.4	70.00%
Risk-free interest rate	2.49%	2.45-2.6
Expected term (years)	4.05-4.13	5.0
Underlying common stock price	\$ 0.40	\$ 0.29-0.30

Because fair value assigned to the warrants exceeded the proceeds received in the Emerald Financing, none of the consideration was allocated to common stock and the Company recorded an adjustment for the difference between the fair value of the warrant liabilities and the total proceeds received to other

expense in the Consolidated Statements of Operations and Comprehensive Loss for the year ended December 31, 2018 as follows:

	Closing		Total
	January 2018	February 2018	
Initial Fair Value of Emerald Financing Warrant Liability	\$ 4,717,211	\$ 5,707,423	\$ 10,424,634
Less: Proceeds from Emerald Financing	1,500,000	1,750,000	3,250,000
Excess over proceeds adjustment	\$ 3,217,211	\$ 3,957,423	\$ 7,174,634

In addition, because the aggregate proceeds were allocated to the fair value of the Emerald Financing warrant liability, issuance costs totaling \$137,192 were charged to other expense for the year ended December 31, 2018.

Series B Warrant Liability (3)

In conjunction with the Redeemable Convertible Series B Preferred Stock financing (Note 5), the Company issued 6,437,500 common stock warrants exercisable at an original price of \$1.15 per share, the warrants expire five years from the issuance date. The warrants were initially valued at \$2,935,800 utilizing a Monte Carlo pricing model. The warrants are exercisable in cash or through a cashless exercise provision and contain certain cash redemption rights. The Series B warrants also had a “down-round” protection feature if the Company subsequently issued or sold any shares of common stock, stock options, or convertible securities at a price less than the current exercise price. The down round provision was triggered and automatically adjusted down to \$0.10 on December 28, 2017, after the Company entered into the Convertible Promissory Note (See Note 4) and again to \$0.00 on January 19, 2018, as a result of the Emerald Financing. The strike price for these warrants is now permanently reset. However, because the remaining warrant holders still have certain cash redemption rights upon the occurrence of certain fundamental transactions, as defined in the Series B warrant agreements, the warrants continue to require liability classification. Subsequent to the repricing that occurred as a result of the Emerald Financing, the warrants have been valued using a Black Scholes Merton Option Pricing Model.

The Company reviewed the classification of the warrants as liabilities or equity under the guidance of ASC 480-10, *Distinguishing Liabilities from Equity*, and concluded that the Series B warrants should be classified as a liability. The Company then applied the fair value allocation methodology for allocating the proceeds of \$5.0 million received from the Series B financing between the conversion liability and the warrants with the residual amount being allocated to the Series B Preferred Stock.

To compute the fair value of the warrants, the Company utilized the Black Scholes Merton Option Pricing Model and Monte Carlo Option Pricing Model for the years ended December 31, 2018 and 2017, respectively. The assumptions are as follows:

	As of December 31,	
	2018	2017
Dividend yield	0.00%	0.00%
Volatility factor	93.00%	70.00%
Risk-free interest rate	2.786- 2.789	1.39%
Expected term (years)	1.64-1.65	0.25
Weighted average fair value of warrants	\$ 0.40	\$ 0.15

[Table of Contents](#)

In January 2018, 987,000 Series B warrants were exercised at a price of \$0.10 resulting in cash proceeds to the Company of \$98,700. Prior to exercise, these Series B Warrants were adjusted to fair market value using a Black Scholes Merton Option Pricing Model which considered the closing trading price on the exercise dates. From January 19, 2018 through December 31, 2018, 4,231,750 Series B warrants were exercised for no consideration. Prior to exercise, these Series B Warrants were adjusted to fair market value using a Black Scholes Merton Option Pricing Model which considered the closing trading price on the exercise dates. Because the exercise price of these options had been reset to \$0.00, the fair value derived from the valuation model approximated the market value of the Company's common stock on the exercise dates.

Emerald Convertible Promissory Note Conversion Liability (4)

In connection with the Convertible Promissory Note (Note 4), the Company bifurcated a conversion liability related to an embedded conversion feature with a down-round protection provision. The Company valued the conversion liability pursuant to the accounting guidance of ASC 820-10, *Fair Value Measurements*, as of the financing date of each closing utilizing the Black Scholes valuation model and the following assumptions:

	January 19, 2018	December 28, 2017
Dividend yield	0.00%	0.00%
Volatility factor	70.00%	70.00%
Risk-free interest rate	1.29%	1.39%
Expected term (years)	0.003	0.25
Underlying common stock price	\$ 0.19	\$ 0.15

The fair values of the conversion liabilities on December 28, 2017 and January 19, 2018, were \$265,000 and \$360,000 respectively. The change in value related to the conversion liability at December 31, 2018 was deemed immaterial due to no substantial change in the assumptions from issuance until year end. In connection with the Emerald Financing discussed in Note 5 below, the Convertible Promissory Note was converted and the conversion liability was extinguished with the debt.

Series B Preferred Stock Conversion Liability (5)

On August 20, 2015, in connection with the Redeemable Convertible Series B Preferred Stock financing, the Company bifurcated a conversion liability related to a down-round protection provided to the Series B investors. The value of this embedded derivative was determined utilizing a "with and without" method by valuing the Series B Preferred Stock with and without the down round protection. During the first fiscal quarter of 2018, all of the remaining Series B Preferred Stock was converted to common stock (See Note 5) and as a result, the Series B conversion liability was reduced to zero. The reduction of this liability totaling \$6,715 was recorded to equity for the year ended December 31, 2018.

Series F Preferred Stock Put Option Liability (6)

On November 1, 2017, in connection with the Series F Preferred Stock financing, the Company recorded a put option liability related to discretionary redemption provided to the stockholders in the event that the Company would undergo a subsequent financing that would result in a change in control. With the assistance of a third-party valuation specialist, the Company valued the conversion liability pursuant to the accounting guidance of ASC 820-10, *Fair Value Measurements*, as of the closing date of the financing. The Company also performed a review of the conversion liability in conjunction with ASC 815, *Derivatives and Hedging/Contracts in Entity's Own Equity*, and determined that the liability required bifurcation and re-measurement to fair market value at the end of each reporting period. The derivative was valued at \$103,364 and was booked as a current liability as of November 1, 2017. The value of this embedded derivative was determined utilizing a with and without method by valuing the preferred stock with and without the down

round protection.

As of December 31, 2017, the Company engaged a third-party valuation specialist to re-measure the conversion liability to fair market value as of that date utilizing the same methodology previously performed. The derivative was classified as a current liability and was considered de minimis as of December 31, 2017. The change in fair market value was recorded as non-operating income of \$103,364 for the year ended December 31, 2017.

[Table of Contents](#)

4. Convertible Debt – Related Party

As of December 31, 2018 and 2017, the Company's Convertible Debt with Emerald consists of the following:

As of December 31,

	<u>2018</u>	<u>2017</u>
Total principal value	\$ 2,000,000	\$ 500,000
Unamortized debt discount	(587,617)	(265,000)
Unamortized debt issuance costs	(51,423)	-
Carrying value of total convertible debt – related party	\$ 1,360,960	\$ 235,000
Less, noncurrent portion	(1,360,960)	-
Current convertible debt – related party	\$ -	\$ 235,000

For the years ended December 31, 2018 and 2017, the Company's interest expense consists of the following:

	Years Ended December	
	31,	
	<u>2018</u>	<u>2017</u>
Coupon interest expense	\$ 26,433	\$ 667
Noncash Interest Expense		
Amortization of debt discount	56,253	-
Amortization of transaction costs	2,283	-
Other interest expense	9,794	-
	\$ 94,763	\$ 667

Multi-Draw Credit Agreement

On October 5, 2018, the Company entered into a Multi-Draw Credit Agreement with Emerald, a related party (Note 11). The Credit Agreement provides for a credit facility to the Company of up to \$20,000,000 and is unsecured. Advances under the Credit Agreement bear interest at an annual rate of 7% (payable quarterly in arrears) and mature on October 5, 2022. At Emerald's election, advances and unpaid interest may be converted into Common Stock at a fixed conversion price of \$0.40, subject to customary adjustments for stock splits, stock dividends, recapitalizations, etc. As of December 31, 2018, the unused portion of the credit facility is \$18,000,000.

The Credit Agreement provides for customary events of default which may result in the acceleration of the maturity of the advances in addition to, but not limited to, cross acceleration to certain other indebtedness of the Company or a change in control. In the case of an event of default arising from specified events of bankruptcy or insolvency or reorganization, all outstanding advance will become due and payable immediately without further action or notice. If any other event of default under the Credit Agreement occurs or is continuing, Emerald may, by written notice, terminate its commitment to make any advances and/or declare all the advances with any other amounts payable due and payable immediately. If any amount under the Credit Agreement is not paid when due, such overdue amount shall bear interest at an annual default interest rate of the applicable rate plus 10%, until such amount is paid in full.

In connection with each advance under the Credit Agreement, the Company has agreed to issue Emerald warrants to purchase shares of common stock in an amount equal to 50% of the number of shares of common stock that each advance may be converted into. The warrants have an exercise price of \$0.50 per share, a term of five years and will be immediately exercisable upon issuance. The exercise price is subject to adjustment in the event of certain stock dividends and distributions, stock splits, stock combinations, reclassifications or similar events or upon any distributions of assets, including cash, stock or other property to the Company's shareholders (See Note 3).

[Table of Contents](#)

On November 1, 2018, an initial advance under Credit Agreement was made for \$2,000,000 and the Company issued 2,500,000 warrants (See Note 3). In accounting for the convertible advance and warrants under the Credit Agreement, the Company allocated the proceeds between the debt host and the freestanding warrants on a relative fair value basis, under which \$1,684,920 was allocated to the debt and \$315,080 was allocated to the warrants. On the date of the advance, because the effective conversion rate of the debt was less than the market value of the Company's common stock, a beneficial conversion feature of \$90,080 has been recorded as a discount to the debt and an increase to additional paid in capital. In addition, a compound derivative liability of \$204,102 related to the contingent interest feature and acceleration upon default provision was bifurcated and will be remeasured at fair value in subsequent periods (See Note 3). The debt discounts related to the warrants, beneficial conversion feature and compound derivative will be amortized over the term of the Credit Agreement using the effective interest rate method. Amortization of the debt discount is recognized as non-cash interest expense. The effective interest rate of the liability component was equal to 10.57% for the year ended December 31, 2018.

The financing costs of \$53,707 incurred in connection with the Credit Agreement have been recorded as a discount to the debt host and are being amortized using the effective interest rate method and recognized as non-cash interest expense over the term of the Credit Agreement.

As of December 31, 2018, the unamortized debt discount will be amortized over a remaining period of approximately 3.76 years. The carrying value of the equity component was \$2,000,000 at December 31, 2018. The if-converted value as of December 31, 2018, does not exceed the principal balance of the advance under the Credit Agreement.

Secured Convertible Promissory Note

On December 28, 2017, the Company entered into a convertible Secured Promissory Note and Security Agreement with Emerald (the "Convertible Promissory Note"). The Convertible Promissory Note provided for aggregate gross proceeds to the Company of up to \$900,000 and was secured by all of the Company's assets. Drawdowns on the Convertible Promissory Note were interest bearing at an annual rate of 12% (compounding semi-annually), payable at maturity. The Convertible Promissory Note matured upon the earlier of June 30, 2018 or upon a default event, as defined, and elected by Emerald. At Emerald's election, drawdowns and unpaid interest were convertible into Common Stock at a conversion price of \$0.10, subject to a full-ratchet antidilution right. The Convertible Promissory Note was automatically converted upon the occurrence of the Private Placement Transaction with Emerald (the Emerald Financing).

The Company received proceeds of \$500,000 on December 28, 2017 and on January 19, 2018 the Company received the remaining \$400,000 in funding as it had satisfied the conditions required. These conditions required receipt of conversion notices from all the existing Series B shareholders to convert their preferred shares to common stock. Such conversions occurred in January and February of 2018. On each financing date, the Company bifurcated a conversion liability from the Convertible Promissory Note related to the embedded conversion feature with a down-round protection provision (See Note 3). This resulted in a conversion liability of \$265,000 at the first financing date which was one trading day prior to December 31, 2017. The second funding in January 2018, resulted in an additional conversion liability of \$360,000. The conversion liabilities were recorded as a discount to the debt at each draw down date and were being amortized to interest expense.

On January 19, 2018, in conjunction with the Emerald Financing (Note 5), the Convertible Promissory Note was automatically converted into common stock at a conversion price of \$0.10 per share for 9,000,000 common shares. Upon conversion, the debt and associated conversion liability were extinguished resulting in a loss on extinguishment of \$590,392 which was recorded as other expense for the year ended December 31, 2018. For the years ended December 31, 2018 and 2017, the effective interest rate on the related to the Convertible Promissory Note was 13.94%.

5. Stockholders' Deficit and Capitalization

Common Stock

On November 14, 2018, the Company amended its articles of incorporation to increase the number of authorized common shares available for issuance to 500,000,000.

[Table of Contents](#)

Emerald Financing

On January 19, 2018, the Company entered into a Securities Purchase Agreement in which the Company sold to Emerald 15,000,000 shares of common stock and a warrant to purchase 20,400,000 shares of common stock at an exercise price of \$0.10 for aggregate gross proceeds of \$1,500,000 (“the Emerald Financing”). This transaction also resulted in the conversion of the \$900,000 Secured Convertible Promissory Note (Note 4). As part of the

transaction, the Company's Board members, with the exception of Dr. Brian Murphy, the Company's CEO/CMO, tendered their resignation and Emerald appointed two new nominees to the Board. The Securities Purchase Agreement also provides that in the case of a subsequent financing in which the purchase price is less than \$0.10 per share, Emerald shall be issued additional shares in order to protect against anti-dilution.

The second closing under the Emerald Financing occurred on February 16, 2018, pursuant to which Nemus issued and sold to Emerald 15,000,000 shares of Nemus' common stock, and a warrant to purchase 20,400,000 shares of Common Stock at an exercise price of \$0.10 per share for a term of five years. In addition, an accredited investor purchased 2,500,000 shares of common stock and a warrant to purchase 3,400,000 shares of common stock at an exercise price of \$0.10 per share for a term of five years. The Company received aggregate gross proceeds of \$1,750,000 from the second closing. In connection with the private placement, the Company incurred issuance cost of \$154,092 of which \$137,192 were allocated to the warrant liability and expensed during the period and \$16,900 were recorded as a reduction to APIC from the issuance of common stock.

Conversion of Preferred Stock

During the years ended December 31, 2018 and 2017, all remaining Preferred Series B, C, D, and F shares were converted to common stock as follows (see "*Preferred Stock*" below for additional information):

- For the years ended December 31, 2018 and 2017, 2,833.55 and 1,197.45 shares of Series B Preferred stock were converted resulting in the issuance of 28,385,000 and 5,910,666 shares of common stock.
- For the year ended December 31, 2017, 386 shares of a Series C Preferred stock outstanding were converted resulting in the issuance of 1,544,000 shares of common stock at an effective price of \$0.25 per share.
- For the years ended December 31, 2018 and 2017, 200 and 1,000 shares of Series D Preferred stock were converted resulting in the issuance of 2,000,000 and 4,000,000 shares of common stock.
- For the year ended December 31, 2018, 2,000 shares of Series F Preferred stock were converted resulting in the issuance of 20,000,000 shares of common stock.

Warrant Exercises

During the year ended December 31, 2018, the Series B warrant holders exercised warrants with an intrinsic value of \$1,514,175 which resulted in the issuance of 5,218,750 shares of common stock.

Stock Issued for Services

In March 2017, the Company issued 605,000 shares of common stock with par value of \$0.001 to a third party in exchange for advisory services performed related to raising additional capital. The Company recorded \$187,550 as general and administrative expense for the first quarter of 2017 to reflect the fair market value of the common stock issued. The fair market value was determined utilizing the Company's closing stock price as of the approval date of the advisory fee by the Company's Board of Directors.

Preferred Stock

The Company has authorized 20,000,000 shares of preferred stock with a par value of \$0.001 per share.

Table of Contents

As of December 31, 2018, all of the Redeemable Convertible Series B and Convertible Series C, D and F Preferred Stock were fully converted, as disclosed above under “Common Stock” and is no longer outstanding. A description of each Series of the Preferred Stock outstanding as of December 31, 2017 is as follows:

Redeemable Convertible Series B Preferred Stock:

In August 2015, the Company sold 5,000 shares of Series B Convertible Preferred Stock and warrants to purchase 6,250,000 shares of the Company’s common stock for an aggregate purchase price of \$1,000 per share resulting in gross proceeds of \$5.0 million. Each share of preferred stock was convertible into 1,250 shares of common stock which resulted in an effective conversion price of \$0.80 per common share and could be converted by the holder at any time. The Series B Preferred Stock also had a “down-round” protection feature provided to the investors if the Company subsequently issued or sold any shares of common stock, stock options, or convertible securities at a price less than the conversion price of \$0.80 per common share. The conversion price was automatically adjustable down to the price of the instrument being issued. On November 1, 2017, as a result of the Series F Preferred Stock Agreement, the conversion price of the Series B Preferred Stock was reset from \$0.25 per share to \$0.15 per share. On December 28, 2017 as a result of entering into the Secured Convertible Promissory Note, the Series B Preferred Stock conversion price was reset to \$0.10 per share. The Series B Preferred Stock had a liquidation preference over other preferred shares and common stock and had voting rights equal to the number of common shares into which each holder’s preferred stock was convertible as of the record date. If dividends were declared on the common stock, the holders of the preferred stock were entitled to participate in such dividends on an as-if converted basis.

In the event of any liquidation, dissolution or winding up of the Company, either voluntary or involuntary, Series B Preferred stockholders would have received an amount per share equal to the conversion price of \$0.10, subject to down-round adjustment, multiplied by the as-if converted share amount of 28,335,500 common shares, totaling \$2,833,550 as of December 31, 2017. If upon the liquidation, the assets are insufficient to permit payments to the Series B holders, all assets legally available would be distributed in a pro rata basis among the Series B holders in proportion to the full amounts they would otherwise be entitled to receive. Any remaining assets would be distributed pro rata among the common stockholders.

Subject to certain trigger events occurring, the Series B Preferred stockholders had the right to force the Company to redeem the shares of preferred stock at a price per preferred share equal to the greater of (A) 115% of the conversion amount and (B) the product of (1) the conversion rate in effect at such time and (2) the greatest closing sale price of the Common Stock during the period beginning on the date immediately preceding such triggering event and ending on the date such holder delivers the notice of redemption. Such triggering events include:

- Failure of the Series B Registration Statement to be declared effective by the Securities and Exchange Commission, or the SEC, on or prior to the date that is ninety days after the Effectiveness Deadline;
- Suspension of the Company’s common stock from trading for a period of (2) consecutive trading days;
- Failure of the Company to deliver all the shares of the common stock or make the appropriate cash payments in a timely manner upon conversion of the Series B Preferred;
- Any default of indebtedness;
- Any filing of voluntary or involuntary bankruptcy by the Company;
- A final judgment in excess of \$100,000 rendered against the Company;
- Breach of representations and warranties in the Stock Purchase Agreement; and
- Failure to comply with the Series B Certificate of Designation or Rule 144 requirements.

As certain of these triggering events are considered to be outside the control of the Company, the Series B Preferred Stock was considered to be

contingently redeemable and as a result, was classified as mezzanine equity in the Company's balance sheet.

During 2018, 2,833.5 shares of Series B Preferred stock with an effective conversion price of \$0.10 were converted at a rate of 10,000:1, resulting in the issuance of 28,335,000 shares of common stock. During 2018, 0.05 shares of Series B Preferred stock with an effective conversion price of \$0.001 were converted at a rate of 1,000,000:1, resulting in the issuance of 50,000 shares of common stock.

From January 1, 2017 through October 31, 2017, 777.125 shares of Series B Preferred stock with an effective conversion price of \$0.25 were converted at a rate of 4000:1, resulting in the issuance of 3,108,500 shares of common stock. From November 1, 2017 through December 28, 2017, 420.325 shares of Series B Preferred stock with an effective conversion price of \$0.15 were converted at a rate of 6666.67:1, resulting in the issuance of 2,802,166 shares of common stock.

[Table of Contents](#)

Convertible Series D Preferred Stock:

In January 2017, the Company sold 1,200 shares of Series D convertible preferred stock with a purchase price of \$1,000 per share for gross proceeds of \$1,200,000 to a healthcare investment fund and other private investors under the Series D Preferred Stock Agreement. Each share of Series D Preferred Stock was convertible into 4,000 shares of common stock and had an initial effective conversion price of \$0.25 per common share. On November 1, 2017, as a result of the Series F Preferred Stock Agreement, the conversion price of the Series D Preferred Stock was reset from \$0.25 to \$0.15 per share. On December 28, 2017 as a result of entering into a Secured Convertible Promissory Note, the Series D Preferred Stock conversion price was reset to \$0.10 per share. As part of the terms of the Series D Preferred Stock Agreement, the Company entered into a Registration Rights Agreement with the purchasers to file a registration statement to register for resale the shares of common stock underlying the preferred shares within 30 days following the closing of the agreement. The Series D Convertible Preferred Stock was convertible into common stock at any time at the election of the investor. The terms of the Series D Convertible Preferred Stock were as follows:

- Dividends: Except for stock dividends or other distributions payable in shares of common stock, for which adjustments are to be made to the conversion price, as described below, the stockholder shall be entitled to receive dividends on preferred stock equal to (on an as-if-converted-to-common-stock basis) and in the same form as dividends actually paid on shares of the common stock. No other dividends were payable on the preferred stock.
- Conversion: The preferred stock could be converted at any time, at the option of the holder, into shares of common stock at the effective conversion price per share ("Series D Conversion Price"). The Series D Conversion Price would be adjusted for customary structural changes such as stock splits or stock dividends. In the event that the Company entered into a merger, consolidation or transaction of a similar effect, the Series D stockholder would be entitled to receive, upon conversion of the preferred stock, the number of shares of common stock of the successor or acquiring corporation of the Company, if it was the surviving corporation, and any additional consideration that would have been received by a holder of the number of shares of common stock into which the preferred stock was convertible immediately prior to such event.
- Down-Round Protection: The Series D Conversion Price was also subject to "down-round" anti-dilution adjustment which means that if the Company sells common stock or common stock equivalents at a price below the Series D Conversion Price, the Series D Conversion Price would be reduced to an amount equal to the issuance price of such additional shares of common stock or common stock equivalents.
- Voting Rights: Except as required by law, the Series D Preferred Stock did not have voting rights.
- Most Favored Nation Provision: If there was a subsequent financing, the Series D stockholder could have elected to exchange its Series D Preferred Stock for the security issued on a dollar for dollar basis.
- Participation Rights: For a twelve month period from the date of the financing, the Series D investors had the right to participate in subsequent financings up to fifty percent of such financing.
- Liquidation Provision: In the event of any liquidation, dissolution or winding up of the Company, either voluntary or involuntary, the Series D Preferred stockholder receives an amount per share equal to the Series D Conversion Price, subject to down-round adjustment, multiplied by the as-if converted share amount. If upon the liquidation, the assets are insufficient to permit payments to the Series C and Series D holders, all assets legally available will be distributed to the Series B Preferred stockholders and then any remaining amount is distributed on a pro rata basis among the Series C and Series D holders in proportion to the full amounts they would otherwise be entitled to receive. Any remaining assets are distributed pro rata among the common stockholders.

The Series D stock had a liquidation preference over common stock. In the event of any liquidation, dissolution or winding up of the Company, either voluntary or involuntary, Series D Preferred stockholders would have received an amount per share equal to the conversion price of \$0.10, subject to down-round adjustment, multiplied by the as-if converted share amount of 2,000,000 common shares, totaling \$200,000 as of December 31, 2017.

The Company also considered the classification of the Series D Preferred Stock Agreement, the Series D Preferred Stock was considered contingently redeemable and as a result, was classified as mezzanine equity in the Company's balance sheet because the Most Favored Nation provision is a redemption feature that is outside the control of the Company.

At the date of the financing, because the effective conversion rate of the preferred stock was less than the market value of the Company's common stock, a beneficial conversion feature of \$536,000 was recorded as a discount to the preferred stock and an increase to additional paid in capital. Because the preferred stock is perpetual, in January 2017, the Company fully amortized the discount related to the beneficial conversion feature on the deemed dividend in the consolidated statement of operations.

Table of Contents

For the year ended December 31, 2018, 200 shares of Series D Preferred stock with an effective conversion price of \$0.10 were converted at a rate of 10,000:1, resulting in the issuance of 2,000,000 shares of common stock.

For the year ended December 31, 2017, 1,000 shares of Series D Preferred stock with an effective conversion price of \$0.25 were converted at a rate of 4000:1, resulting in the issuance of 4,000,000 shares of common stock.

Convertible Series F Preferred Stock:

In November 2017, the Company sold 2,000 shares of Series F convertible preferred stock with a purchase price of \$1,000 per share for gross proceeds of \$2,000,000 to a healthcare fund under the Series F Preferred Stock Agreement. Each share of Series F Preferred Stock was initially convertible into 6,666.67 shares and had an initial conversion price of \$0.15 per common share. On December 28, 2017, as a result of entering into a Secured Convertible Promissory Note (See Note 4), the conversion price of the Series F Preferred Stock was reset to \$0.10. As part of the terms of the Series F Preferred Stock Agreement, the Company entered into a Registration Rights Agreement with the purchaser to file a registration statement to register for resale the shares of common stock underlying the preferred shares within 30 days following the closing of the agreement. Each share of Series F Preferred Stock was convertible into common stock at any time at the election of the investor. The terms of the Series F Convertible Preferred Stock were as follows:

- Dividends: Except for stock dividends or other distributions payable in shares of common stock, for which adjustments are to be made to the conversion price, as described below, the stockholder was entitled to receive dividends on preferred stock equal to (on an as-if-converted-to-common-stock basis) and in the same form as dividends actually paid on shares of the common stock. No other dividends were payable on the preferred stock.
- Conversion: The preferred stock was convertible at any time, at the option of the holder, into shares of common stock at the effective conversion price per share ("Series F Conversion Price"). The Series F Conversion Price was adjustable for customary structural changes such as stock splits or stock dividends. In the event that the Company entered into a merger, consolidation or transaction of a similar effect, the Series F stockholder would have been entitled to receive, upon conversion of the preferred stock, the number of shares of common stock of the successor or acquiring corporation of the Company, if it is the surviving corporation, and any additional consideration that would have been received by a holder of the number of shares of common stock into which the preferred stock is convertible immediately prior to such event.
- Down-Round Protection: The Series F Conversion Price was also subject to "down-round" anti-dilution adjustment which means that if the Company sold common stock or common stock equivalents at a price below the Series F Conversion Price, the Series F Conversion Price was reduced to an amount equal to the issuance price of such additional shares of common stock or common stock equivalents.
- Voting Rights: Except as required by law, the Series F Preferred Stock did not have voting rights.
- Discretionary Redemption Provision: If there was a subsequent transaction that resulted in a change in control, the Series F stockholder may have required the Company to redeem the shares for the sum of 150% of the aggregate stated value of the Series F Shares and all liquidated damages. However, if net proceeds from the triggering transaction are less than \$6 million then the redemption amount shall equal 50% of the total proceeds of such transaction.
- Participation Rights: For an eighteen-month period from the date of the financing, the Series F investors had the right to participate in subsequent financings up to fifty percent of such financing.
- Liquidation Provision: In the event of any liquidation, dissolution or winding up of the Company, either voluntary or involuntary, the Series F stockholder had no liquidation preference.

Subject to certain trigger events occurring, the Series F Preferred stockholders had the right to force the Company to redeem the shares of preferred stock at a price per preferred share equal to the greater of (A) 130% of the conversion amount and (B) the product of (1) the conversion rate in effect at such time and (2) the greatest closing sale price of the Common Stock during the period beginning on the date immediately preceding such triggering event and ending on the date such holder delivers the notice of redemption. Such triggering events included:

- Failure of the Series F Registration Statement to be declared effective by the Securities and Exchange Commission, or the SEC, on or prior to the date that is one hundred and eighty (180) days after the Effectiveness Deadline;
- Suspension of the Company's common stock from trading for a period of five (5) consecutive trading days;
- Failure of the Company to deliver all the shares of the common stock or make the appropriate cash payments in a timely manner upon conversion of the Series F Preferred;
- Any default of indebtedness;
- Any filing of voluntary or involuntary bankruptcy by the Company;
- A final judgment in excess of \$100,000 rendered against the Company;
- Breach of representations and warranties in the Stock Purchase Agreement;
- Failure to comply with the Series F Certificate of Designation or Rule 144 requirements; and
- A change in control that would result in the holder exercising its put option (discussed in Note 3).

As certain of these triggering events are considered to be outside the control of the Company, the Series F Preferred Stock was considered to be contingently redeemable and as a result, was classified as mezzanine equity in the Company's balance sheet.

At the date of the financing, because the conversion of the preferred stock was contingent upon certain events, the conversion feature was not beneficial.

In addition, on December 28, 2017, as a result of entering into a Secured Convertible Promissory Note which resulted in the adjustment of the conversion price to \$0.10, a beneficial conversion feature of \$333,333 has been recorded as a discount to the preferred stock and an increase to additional paid in capital. Because the preferred stock was perpetual, in December 2017, the Company fully amortized the discount related to the beneficial conversion feature on the deemed dividend in the consolidated statement of operations.

For the year ended December 31, 2018, 2,000 shares of Series F Preferred stock with an effective conversion price of \$0.10 were converted at a rate of 10,000:1, resulting in the issuance of 20,000,000 shares of common stock.

6. Stock-Based Compensation

Stock Incentive Plan

On October 31, 2014, after the closing of the Merger, our Board of Directors approved the 2014 Omnibus Incentive Plan (the "2014 Plan"). The 2014 Plan initially reserved 3,200,000 shares for future grants and on October 16, 2018, the Company increased the share reserve under the 2014 Plan to equal 10% of the number of issued and outstanding shares of common stock of the Company. The 2014 Plan authorizes the issuance of awards including stock options, stock appreciation rights, restricted stock, stock units and performance units to employees, directors, and consultants of the Company. As of December 31, 2018, the shares available for future grant under the 2014 Plan as follows:

	Shares Available for Grant
Available as of December 31, 2017	870,000
Share pool increase	10,190,774
Forfeited	427,000
Expired	48,000
Granted	<u>(2,393,501)</u>
Available as of December 31, 2018	<u>9,142,273</u>

[Table of Contents](#)

Stock Options

Options granted under the 2014 Plan expire no later than 10 years from the date of grant. Options granted under the 2014 Plan may be either incentive or non-qualified stock options. For incentive and non-qualified stock option grants, the option price shall be at least 100% of the fair value on the date of grants, as determined by the Company's Board of Directors. If at any time the Company grants an option, and the optionee directly or by attribution owns stock possessing more than 10% of the total combined voting power of all classes of stock of the Company, the option price shall be at least 110% of the fair value and shall not be exercisable more than five years after the date of grant.

Options granted under the 2014 Plan may be immediately exercisable if permitted in the specific grant approved by the Board of Directors and, if exercised early may be subject to repurchase provisions. The shares issued generally vest over a period of one to five years from the date of grant.

The following is a summary of option activity under the Company's 2014 Plan for the year ended December 31, 2018:

	Number of Shares	Weighted Average Exercise Price	Weighted Average Remaining Contractual Term (Years)	Aggregate Intrinsic Value*
Outstanding, December 31, 2017	1,130,000	\$ 0.60	6.89	
Granted	1,750,000	0.30		
Expired	(48,000)	2.57		
Forfeited	(427,000)	0.66		
Outstanding, December 31, 2018	2,405,000	\$ 0.33	8.71	\$ 182,000
Exercisable, December 31, 2018	859,417	\$ 0.37	7.39	\$ 36,458
Vested and Expected to Vest, December 31, 2018	2,405,000	\$ 0.33	8.71	\$ 182,000

*The aggregate intrinsic value is the sum of the amounts by which the quoted market price of the Company's stock exceeded the exercise price of the stock options at December 31, 2018 for those stock options for which the quoted market price was in excess of the exercise price ("in-the-money options").

The weighted-average fair value of stock options granted for the year ended December 31, 2018 was \$0.30. There were no stock option grants to employees during the year ended December 31, 2017 and no options were granted to non-employees during the years ended December 31, 2018 and 2017.

The fair value of each stock option grant was estimated on the date of grant using the Black-Scholes option pricing model under the following assumptions:

	Year Ended December 31, 2018
Dividend Yield	—
Risk-free interest rate	3.06–3.1%
Expected term (in years)	5.27-5.58
Volatility	70-93.6%

[Table of Contents](#)

Restricted Stock Awards

The following is a summary of RSA activity under the Company's 2014 Plan for the year ended December 31, 2018:

	Number of Shares	Weighted Average Grant Date Fair Value
Unvested, December 31, 2017	1,050,000	\$ 0.75
Granted	643,501	0.26
Released	(1,050,000)	0.75
Unvested, December 31, 2018	643,501	\$ 0.26

On February 28, 2018, in conjunction with the signing of the K2C separation agreement discussed in Note 11 below, Mr. Lykos' RSA's amounting to 325,000 shares vested immediately resulting in a Type III award modification and a credit to stock compensation of \$98,042 for the year ended December 31, 2018 due to a lower fair value of those shares as of the modification date.

On May 25, 2018, in conjunction with the signing of her separation agreement, the former Nemus CFO, Ms. Elizabeth Berezcz's RSA's amounting to 350,000 shares vested immediately resulting in a Type III award modification and a credit to stock compensation of \$97,183 for the year ended December 31, 2018 due to a lower fair value of those shares as of the modification date as compared to the fair value immediately prior to acceleration.

Awards Granted Outside the 2014 Plan

Options

On May 25, 2018, the Company entered into Stock Option Agreement with Douglas Cesario, CFO, granting 1,195,073 stock options with an exercise price equal to \$0.245 and a grant date fair value of \$200,772 or \$0.26 per share based on the following assumptions estimated on the date of grant using the Black-Scholes option pricing model:

	<u>At Issuance</u>
Dividend Yield	-
Risk-free interest rate	2.79%
Expected term (in years)	5.54
Volatility	70%

The options vested 25% on July 23, 2018, and the remaining 75% will vest 1/33 on each of the next 33 months thereafter. Options will fully vest upon a Triggering Event, including a Sale of the Company or a Merger that results in a change of control. At December 31, 2018, these options have a remaining contractual life of 9.57 years. At December 31, 2018, 434,572 options are exercisable and have an aggregate intrinsic value of \$67,359. At December 31, 2018, 1,195,073 options are vested and are expected to vest and have an aggregate intrinsic value of \$185,236.

Restricted Stock Awards

On January 18, 2018, the Company entered into Restricted Stock Agreements with each of Dr. Murphy, Elizabeth Berezcz, CFO, and Cosmas N. Lykos, the Company's Founder granting 900,000, 700,000, and 900,000 shares of restricted common stock, respectively, with a fair market value of \$475,000. These agreements were issued outside of the 2014 Omnibus Incentive Plan. The restricted stock vests in equal 50% installments on the first and second anniversaries of the grant date, subject to continued employment with Nemus through the applicable vesting date. Each Restricted Stock Agreement provides that if an executive's employment or service is terminated by the Company without cause, or is terminated by the grantee for good reason, then the executive shall be entitled to receive a cash severance payment equal to six months of their base compensation, payable in substantially equal installments during the six-month period following the separation along with accelerated vesting of all outstanding stock awards.

On February 28, 2018, in conjunction with the signing of the K2C separation agreement discussed in Note 10 below, Mr. Lykos' Restricted stock awards amounting to 900,000 shares became immediately vested resulting in a Type III award modification and stock compensation expense of \$216,000 for the year ended December 31, 2018, due to an increase in the fair value of the award immediately before and after the modification date.

[Table of Contents](#)

On May 25, 2018, in conjunction with the signing of her separation agreement discussed above, the former Nemus CFO, Ms. Elizabeth Berecz's Restricted stock awards amounting to 700,000 shares became immediately vested resulting in the recording of compensation expense of \$184,800 for the year ended December 31, 2018, due to an increase in the fair value of the award immediately before and after the modification date.

The following is a summary of RSA activity outside of the Company's 2014 Plan for the year ended December 31, 2018:

	Number of Shares	Weighted Average Grant Date Fair Value
Unvested, December 31, 2017	-	\$ -
Granted	2,500,000	0.19
Released	(1,600,000)	0.19
Unvested, December 31, 2018	900,000	\$ 0.19

Stock-Based Compensation Expense

The Company recognizes compensation expense using the straight-line method over the requisite service period. For the years ended December 31, 2018 and 2017, the Company recognized stock-based compensation expense of \$674,961 and \$608,676, respectively (including compensation expense for RSAs discussed above), which was recorded as a general and administrative expense in the Consolidated Statements of Operations and Comprehensive Loss. The total amount of unrecognized compensation cost was \$748,616 as of December 31, 2018. This amount will be recognized over a weighted average period of 1.43 years.

7. Net Loss Per Share of Common Stock

The following table is a reconciliation of the numerators and denominators used in the calculation of basic and diluted net loss per share computations for the years ended December 31, 2018 and 2017:

	Year Ended December 31,	
	2018	2017
Net loss	\$ (19,194,236)	\$ (4,138,298)
Weighted average common shares outstanding – basic and diluted	121,154,334	27,906,090
Net loss per share – basic and diluted	\$ (0.16)	\$ (0.11)

The following outstanding shares of common stock equivalents were excluded from the computation of diluted net loss per share of common stock for the periods presented because including them would have been antidilutive:

	Year Ended December 31,	
	2018	2017
Stock options	3,600,073	1,130,000
Unvested restricted stock	1,543,501	1,050,000
Common shares underlying convertible debt	5,000,000	4,000,000
Common shares underlying convertible preferred stock	-	50,335,500
Warrants	53,130,750	11,649,500

[Table of Contents](#)

8. Income Taxes

Under the FASB's accounting guidance related to income tax positions, among other things, the impact of an uncertain income tax position on the income tax return must be recognized at the largest amount that is more-likely-than-not to be sustained upon audit by the relevant taxing authority. An uncertain income tax position will not be recognized if it has less than a 50% likelihood of being sustained. Additionally, the guidance provides guidance on derecognition, classification, interest and penalties, accounting in interim period, disclosure and transition.

The Company had no accrual for interest or penalties on the Company's Balance Sheets at December 31, 2018 and 2017, and has not recognized interest and/or penalties in the statements of operations for the years ended December 31, 2018 or 2017.

The Company is subject to taxation in the United States and California. The Company's tax years for 2015 (federal) and 2014 (California) and forward are subject to examination by the United States and California tax authorities.

On December 22, 2017, the President of the United States signed into law the Tax Cuts and Jobs Act (the "Act"). The Act amends the Internal Revenue Code to reduce tax rates and modify policies, credits, and deductions for individuals and business. For businesses, the Act reduces the corporate tax rate from a maximum of 35% to a flat 21% rate. The rate reduction is effective on January 1, 2018. As a result of the rate reduction, the Company has reduced the deferred tax asset balance as of December 31, 2017 by \$1,831,610. As a result of the full valuation allowance on the net deferred tax assets, there was a corresponding adjustment to the valuation allowance for this same amount. Therefore, there is no impact on the Company's net loss and comprehensive loss for the year ended December 31, 2017 due to the law change.

The SEC has issued Staff Accounting Bulletin No. 118 ("SAB 118") to address the application of US GAAP in situations when a registrant does not have the necessary information available, prepared, or analyzed (including computations) in reasonable detail to complete the accounting for certain income tax effects of the Act. In accordance with SAB 118, the Company has determined that there is no deferred tax benefit or expense with respect to the re-measurement of certain deferred tax assets and liabilities due to the full valuation allowance against net deferred tax assets. We have completed our analysis of the Act's income tax effects.

At December 31, 2018, the Company had federal and California net operating loss carry forwards ("NOLs") aggregating \$18,242,333 and \$18,236,157 respectively, which, if not used, it will begin to expire from 2035.

Utilization of the domestic net operating loss (NOL) will be subject to a substantial annual limitation due to ownership change limitations that may have occurred or that could occur in the future, as required by Section 382 of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended (the Code), as well as similar state provisions. These ownership changes may limit the amount of NOL carryforwards that can be utilized annually to offset future taxable income and tax, respectively. In general, an "ownership change" as defined by Section 382 of the Code, results from a transaction or series of transactions over a three-year period resulting in an ownership change of more than 50 percentage points of the outstanding stock of a company by certain stockholders.

Upon the occurrence of an ownership change under Section 382 as outlined above, utilization of the NOL carryforwards are subject to an annual limitation under Section 382 of the Code, which is determined by first multiplying the value of the Company's stock at the time of the ownership change by the applicable long-term, tax-exempt rate, and then could be subject to additional adjustments, as required. Any limitation may result in expiration of a portion of the NOL credit carryforwards before utilization. However, due to the existence of the valuation allowance for deferred tax assets, any potential change in ownership will not impact the Company's effective tax rate.

[Table of Contents](#)

The tax effects of temporary differences and carryforwards that give rise to significant portions of the deferred income tax assets are as follows:

	As of December 31,	
	2018	2017
Current deferred tax assets/(liabilities):		
State taxes	\$ 345	\$ 336
Capitalized research and development costs	10,327	22,717
Other	187,377	295,265
Net operating loss	5,104,432	3,697,169
Gross deferred tax assets	5,302,481	4,015,487
Valuation allowance	(5,302,481)	(4,015,487)
Total deferred tax assets	\$ -	\$ -

The provision for income taxes on earnings subject to income taxes differs from the statutory Federal rate at December 31, 2018 and 2017, due to the following:

	As of December 31,	
	2018	2017
Expected income tax benefit at federal statutory tax rate	\$ (4,030,454)	\$ (1,082,444)
State income taxes, net of federal benefit	(319,816)	(208,619)
Change in fair value of Warrant	2,869,116	(268,519)
Change in valuation allowance	1,286,995	(344,321)
Stock Compensation	67,966	73,881
Other Perm Difference	127,835	12
Tax Cuts and Jobs Act	-	1,831,610
Provision for Income Taxes	\$ 1,642	\$ 1,600

The Company records a valuation allowance against deferred tax assets to the extent that it is more likely than not that some portion, or all of, the deferred tax assets will not be realized. Due to the substantial doubt related to the Company's ability to utilize its deferred tax assets, a valuation allowance for the full amount of the deferred tax assets has been established at December 31, 2018. As a result of this valuation allowance, there are no income tax benefits reflected in the accompanying statement of operations to offset pre-tax losses.

9. Significant Contracts

University of Mississippi Agreements

In July 2013, the Company entered into a Memorandum of Understanding (MOU) with UM to engage in joint research of extracting, manipulating, and studying cannabinoids in certain forms to develop intellectual property (IP) with the intention to create and commercialize therapeutic medicines. This MOU resulted in Nemus entering into several licenses and research agreements with UM, related to a prodrug of tetrahydrocannabinol (THC) and an analog of cannabidiol (CBD). The term of the MOU agreement expired in 2018 and was not renewed since the Company and the University had entered into a number of licenses for the aforementioned compounds.

UM 5050 Pro-Drug Agreements

On September 29, 2014, the Company executed three license agreements with UM pursuant to which UM granted the Company exclusive, perpetual, worldwide licenses, including the right to sublicense, to intellectual property related to UM 5050, a pro-drug formulation of tetrahydrocannabinol, or THC

for products administered through each of ocular, oral or rectal delivery. Nemus has decided to initially focus UM 5050 product development on developing ocular medicines for the treatment of ophthalmic-related diseases of the eye. In July 2018, the Company notified UM that it will renew the license for UM 5050 related to ocular delivery of the prodrug of THC. The license agreement for ocular delivery contains certain milestone payments, royalty and sublicensing fees, as defined therein. There is an annual fee of \$25,000, payable on the anniversary of the effective date and this amount was paid in September 2018. The aggregate milestone payments under the license agreement, if all of the milestones are achieved, is \$700,000. The license agreement also requires the Company to reimburse UM for patent costs incurred related to these products under license. The license agreement will terminate upon expiration of the patents, breach or default of the license agreement, or upon 60 days written notice by the Company to UM.

[Table of Contents](#)

On October 15, 2014, the Company signed a renewable option agreement for the rights to explore other routes of delivery of UM 5050 not yet agreed upon and/or in combination with other cannabinoids or other compatible compounds. The Company has been working with UM to establish new agreements derived from this option agreement and let the other routes of administration option expire.

[UM 8930 Analog Agreements](#)

On December 14, 2015, the Company executed two license agreements with UM pursuant to which UM granted us exclusive, perpetual, worldwide

licenses, including the right to sublicense, to intellectual property related to UM 8930, an analog formulation of CBD, for products administered through each of ocular or rectal delivery. In July 2018, the Company renewed the ocular delivery license. The license agreement for ocular delivery contains certain milestone payments, royalty and sublicensing fees, as defined therein. There is an annual fee of \$25,000, payable on the anniversary of the effective date and this amount was paid in December 2018. The aggregate milestone payments under the license agreement, if all of the milestones are achieved, is \$700,000. The license agreement also requires the Company to reimburse UM for patent costs incurred related to these products under license. The license agreement will terminate upon expiration of the patents, breach or default of the license agreement, or upon 60 days' written notice by the Company to UM.

On December 14, 2015, the Company signed a renewable option agreement for the rights to explore other routes of delivery of UM 8930 not yet agreed upon and/or in combination with other cannabinoids or other compatible compounds. The Company has been working with UM to establish new licenses derived from this option agreement and let the other routes of administration option expire.

UM 5070 License Agreement

On January 10, 2017, the Company entered into a license agreement with UM pursuant to which UM granted the Company an exclusive, perpetual license, including the right to sublicense, under intellectual property related to UM 5070, a platform of cannabinoid-based molecules to research, develop and commercialize products for the treatment of infectious diseases. The license agreement culminates roughly one year of screening and target molecule identification studies especially focused on therapy-resistant infectious organisms like methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* (MRSA). The license agreement contains certain milestone payments, royalty and sublicensing fees, as defined therein. There is an annual fee of \$25,000, payable on the anniversary of the effective date and this amount was paid in January 2018 and January 2019. The aggregate milestone payment under the license agreement, if all of the milestones are achieved, is \$700,000. This license agreement also requires the Company to reimburse UM for patent costs incurred related to these products under the license. This license agreement will terminate upon expiration of the patents, breach or default of the license agreement, or upon 60 days' written notice by the Company to UM.

UM Research Agreement

In August 2018, we entered into a research agreement with UM to conduct an animal study in normotensive animals to assess the use of NB1111, the prodrug of THC, using nanoemulsion delivery of the Company's proprietary molecule when compared to a prostaglandin standard of care. Safety data will also be collected. The original term of the Research Agreement was through January 31, 2019. In February 2019 the term of the research agreement was extended through May 31, 2019. The agreement may be terminated for convenience or cause by either party at any time without penalty. The aggregate amount of payments due by the Company under the contract for services rendered by UM is up to \$155,156. Upon cancellation, the Company is responsible for paying any amounts incurred by UM in connection with the services through the termination date.

AMRI Agreement

On July 31, 2018, the Company entered into a letter agreement with Albany Molecular Research Inc., or AMRI, pursuant to which AMRI is to provide services to the Company for process development and analytical method development and qualification for the Company's prodrug of tetrahydrocannabinol, or THC, as well as for sample production and a stability study.

[Table of Contents](#)

Pursuant to the terms of the agreement, the Company will pay an estimated \$64,200 in fees and expenses for the initial evaluation and development of a process for the production of the Company's pro-drug of THC to ensure reproducibility, quality and safety. In December 2018, we entered into an agreement with AMRI to extend the initial process development phase for the production of our prodrug of by approximately two months and to pay up to an incremental \$71,800 for this phase. After the initial evaluation, the Company has agreed to pay additional fees and expenses for manufacturing and sample production of our prodrug of THC and a stability study, as well as possible extensions or modification of the aforementioned projects.

We may at any time cancel or delay any project under the agreement prior to the scheduled start date, provided that we must reimburse AMRI for costs incurred prior to and including the date of cancellation, plus any reasonable and foreseeable costs associated with stopping work on any project, including AMRI's loss of revenue incurred as a result of reserving production facilities for our exclusive use. We may terminate the agreement in whole or in part at any time upon 30 days' written notice to AMRI. Either party may terminate the agreement in writing in the event of default by the other party which is not cured within 30 days of receipt of notice of default for the following events of default: (i) insolvency of such party, (ii) any assignment for the benefit of creditors of such party, (iii) voluntary or involuntary filing of a petition, order or other decree in bankruptcy by or against such party, (iv) commencement of any proceeding for liquidation of, reorganization of, or the composition, extension, arrangement or readjustment of the obligations of such party, (v) failure by such party to comply with any provision of the agreement in any material respect, and (vi) proof that any representations made by such party were false when made.

Glauconix Agreement

In November 2018 we executed a master service agreement and a statement of work with Glauconix Biosciences, Inc. to research the mechanism of action of and IOP lowering ability of THC when exposed to the 3D-human trabecular meshwork tissue constructs (3D-HTMTM) using both healthy and diseased tissue constructs. The expected term of the study is approximately 12 weeks and may be terminated for convenience by Nemus with a minimum of 30 days written notice or by either party, if the other party breaches any material term or becomes insolvent. If termination is sought by either party, Nemus is responsible for all work performed (including any partially completed work based on percentage completion) and expenses incurred through the date of termination. The aggregate amount of payments due by the Company under the contract for services rendered by Glauconix is \$180,424.

10. Commitments and Contingencies

Legal Matters

General Litigation and Disputes

From time to time, in the normal course of our operations, we may be a party to litigation and other dispute matters and claims. Litigation can be expensive and disruptive to normal business operations. Moreover, the results of complex legal proceedings are difficult to predict. An unfavorable outcome to any legal matter, if material, could have a materially adverse effect on our operations or our financial position, liquidity or results of operations. As of December 31, 2018, there were no pending or threatened lawsuits or claims that could reasonably be expected to have a material effect on the Company's financial position or results of operations, but the Company has filed a petition commencing arbitration as described below.

Pending Series E Preferred Stock Financing and Filing for Arbitration

On May 3, 2017, the Company entered into a securities purchase agreement with a purchaser to sell 1,000,000 shares of a new Series E Preferred Stock,

par value \$0.001 per share, at a purchase price of \$20.00 for each preferred share for aggregate gross proceeds of \$20,000,000. The securities purchase agreement provides for no conditions precedent to the close and that closing is not to occur later than July 10, 2017. The purchaser did not provide funding to close the transaction on July 10, 2017 as required under the securities purchase agreement and requested an extension of the closing date. In connection with the signing of the securities purchase agreement, an affiliate of the purchaser entered into a financial guarantee to the benefit of the Company that provided for payment of the purchase price in full within 90 days of exercise. The Company exercised this guarantee on July 12, 2017. The guarantor has failed to pay the \$20,000,000 within 90 days of notice of the purchaser's default, as required by the terms of the guaranty.

[Table of Contents](#)

On November 8, 2017, the Company filed a petition commencing arbitration against the purchaser and guarantor as well as other related individuals. In the petition, the Company asserts, among other things, breach of contract against the purchaser for its failure to close its purchase of Series E Preferred Stock as required by the securities purchase agreement. The Company also asserts a breach of contract claim against the guarantor for its failure to honor its guarantee of the transaction. The petition was filed with Judicial Arbitration and Mediation Services, Inc., ENDISPUTE in Orange County, California, as required by the securities purchase agreement. The Company has engaged its legal counsel in the matter on a contingent-fee basis, other than costs, but that firm has subsequently decided to not proceed with the case. The Company is currently assessing its intent to continue pursue damages and remedies

in connection with these agreements.

Government Proceedings

Like other companies in the pharmaceutical industry, we are subject to extensive regulation by national, state and local government agencies in the United States. As a result, interaction with government agencies occurs in the normal course of our operations. It is possible that criminal charges and substantial fines and/or civil penalties or damages could result from any government investigation or proceeding. As of December 31, 2018, the Company had no proceedings or inquiries.

Change in Control Severance Plan

In February 2015, we adopted a change in control severance plan, in which our named executive officers participate, that provides for the payment of severance benefits if the executive's service is terminated within twelve months following a change in control, either due to a termination without cause or upon a resignation for good reason (as each term is defined in the plan).

In either such event, and provided the executive timely executes and does not revoke a general release of claims against the Company, he or she will be entitled to receive: (i) a lump sum cash payment equal to at least six months of the executive's monthly compensation, plus an additional month for each full year of service over six years, (ii) Company-paid premiums for continued health insurance for a period equal to length of the cash severance period or, if earlier, when executive becomes covered under a subsequent employer's healthcare plan, and (iii) full vesting of all then-outstanding unvested stock options and restricted stock awards.

Leases

On September 1, 2014, the Company signed an operating lease for laboratory and office space at the Innovation Hub, Insight Park located on the UM campus. The lease term commenced on October 1, 2014 and expired on December 31, 2017. There is annual escalating rent provisions and two months of free rent in the agreement. The total cash payments were straight-lined over the life of the lease and the monthly amount charged to rent expense was \$9,267. Upon expiration, the Company did not renew the laboratory lease but has retained office space under a month-to-month agreement at the rate of \$300 per month.

The Company maintained its principal executive offices located in a shared office suite located at 600 Anton Blvd., Suite 1100, Costa Mesa, CA, 92626 under a month-to-month agreement. Effective March 1, 2018, the Company moved its corporate offices to 130 North Marina Drive, Long Beach, CA 90803 under a month-to-month agreement at a rate of approximately \$2,600 per month.

In November 2015, the Company entered into an operating lease for its office and lab furnishings both in Costa Mesa and the Innovation Hub laboratory. The monthly lease payments were \$7,559. In November 2017, the Company bought out the remaining portion of the lease for \$32,128 which covered the remaining lease payments as well as the value of the furniture amounting to \$19,654. The lab furnishings were donated to the University of Mississippi and the office furnishings were written off due to non-use for a loss on disposal of \$1,650.

Total net rent expense related to our operating leases for the years ended December 31, 2018 and 2017 was \$43,102 and \$253,437, respectively. There are no future minimum payments under non-cancellable operating leases.

[Table of Contents](#)

11. Related Party Matters

K2C, Inc.

In June 2014, our subsidiary entered into an independent contractor agreement with K2C, Inc. (“K2C”), which is wholly owned by the Company’s then Executive Chairman and Co-Founder, Mr. Cosmas N. Lykos, pursuant to which the Company paid K2C a monthly fee for services performed by Mr. Lykos for the Company. The agreement expired on June 1, 2017 and was automatically renewed for one year pursuant to the terms of the agreement. The monthly fee under the agreement was \$10,000 and increased to \$20,000 effective April 1, 2017.

In February 2018, the Company entered into a separation and release agreement with K2C, which provided for a lump sum payment of \$180,000 and the immediate vesting of 900,000 shares of restricted common stock granted on January 18, 2018, 325,000 shares of restricted common stock granted on October 20, 2015, and 125,000 options granted on November 21, 2014, in exchange for a release of claims and certain other agreements. For the year ended December 31, 2018, the Company recognized additional stock-based compensation expense of \$112,270 for these restricted stock and option awards.

For the years ended December 31, 2018 and 2017, total expense incurred under this agreement was \$220,000 (including the previously discussed lump sum payment) and \$210,000 respectively. Under the separation agreement, Mr. Lykos was allowed to participate in the Company’s health, death and disability insurance plans for six months subsequent to K2C’s separation.

Emerald Health Sciences

On February 1, 2018, the Company entered into an Independent Contractor Agreement with Emerald, pursuant to which Emerald agreed to provide such services as are mutually agreed between the Company and Emerald, including reimbursement for reasonable expenses incurred in the performance of the Independent Contractor Agreement. These services can include, but are not limited to, corporate advisory services and technical expertise in the areas of business development, marketing, investor relations, information technology and product development. The Independent Contractor Agreement has an initial term of ten years and specifies compensation which is agreed upon between the Company’s chief executive officer and Emerald’s Chairman, CEO and President on a month-to-month basis. The fee due under this agreement is payable on a monthly basis, however, if the Company is unable to make payments due to insufficient funds, then interest on the outstanding balance will accrue at a rate of 12% per annum, calculated semi-annually. Under this agreement, for the year ended December 31, 2018, the Company incurred expenses of \$550,000.

On February 6, 2018, the Company entered into a Consulting Agreement with Dr. Avtar Dhillon, the Chairman, Chief Executive Officer and President of Emerald. The services under the Consulting Agreement included, corporate finance and strategic business advisory. The Consulting Agreement had an initial term of one year and was renewable automatically unless terminated by either party. The agreement specified an annual fee of \$60,000 payable semi-monthly in installments and included reimbursement for reasonable expenses incurred in the performance of the services. The contractor was also entitled to a discretionary annual bonus, payable 120 days after each fiscal year end, to be determined by the Board upon its annual review. Under this agreement, for the year ended December 31, 2018, the Company incurred \$45,000. The Consulting Agreement was canceled on October 5, 2018 in connection with the Company’s entry into the Credit Agreement with Emerald (Note 4), and Dr. Avtar Dhillon was appointed as the Executive Chairman of the Company’s Board of Directors.

12. Subsequent Events

Pharmaceuticals International, Inc. Agreement

In January 2019 we executed an agreement with Pharmaceuticals International, Inc. (“Pii”) to conduct studies to determine options for producing a sterile dosage form which can be dosed in humans in a phase I study. Pii will focus efforts on an immediate release formulation and will conduct appropriate formulation studies to determine processing options and formulations which can either be sterile filtered, radiated or terminally sterilized. Pursuant to the terms of the agreement, the Company will pay an estimated \$72,500 to initiate the project. After the initial evaluation, the Company has agreed to pay additional fees and expenses upon completion of certain milestones.

Nemus may terminate this Agreement at any time and for any reason at the sole discretion upon thirty days advance written notice to Pii. Upon such termination, Nemus shall pay all costs incurred by Pii for work performed prior to the effective date of termination, provided Pii provides written evidence that such costs have been incurred and such work performed. Either party may terminate this Agreement if the other party is in default of any of its material obligations set forth herein, and such breach is not cured within 60 days, which time period shall be reduced to thirty days for any default of any monetary obligation, after the breaching party’s receipt of a written notice from the nonbreaching party that describes such breach in reasonable detail.

RRD International Agreement

In January 2019 we entered into work orders #2 and #3 with RRD International, LLC (“RRD”) which relate to the Master Services Agreement dated March 10, 2016. Under the terms of these additional work orders, RRD shall provide strategic 505(b)(2) regulatory planning, prepare a Pre-IND (“PIND”) meeting information package and set up and attend a PIND meeting with the FDA. The term of the work order shall continue until the earlier of April 30, 2019 or the date upon which the services are complete unless this Work Order is terminated by the Parties. The aggregate amount of payments due by the Company under the contract is \$78,680 plus an estimated \$22,000 of pass through expenses and consulting fees.

2nd Draw on Multi Draw Credit Facility

On February 1, 2019, the Company effected the second draw under the Credit Agreement in the amount of \$2,000,000 and issued Emerald a warrant to purchase 2,500,000 shares of common stock at an exercise price of \$0.50 per share, in accordance with the terms of the Credit Agreement.

Corporate Name Change

At the Board of Director meeting held on February 4, 2019 it was unanimously approved to proceed with changing the Company’s name from Nemus Bioscience, Inc. to Emerald Bioscience, Inc. The amendment to the Company’s articles of incorporation will be effective upon the filing of a Certificate of Amendment with the Nevada Secretary of State, which is expected to occur on or about March 25, 2019.

Noramco Agreement

In February 2019, we entered into a master development and clinical supply agreement with Noramco, Inc. (“Noramco”) to provide manufacturing and product development services for the Company’s analog formulation of cannabidiol (“CBD”). The Company will pay \$146,386 upfront and additional payments will be made upon Noramco shipping of the active pharmaceutical ingredient to the Company.

Either party may terminate this Agreement immediately without further action if (i) the other party files a petition in bankruptcy, or enters into an agreement with its creditors, or applies for or consents to the appointment of a receiver, administrative receiver, trustee or administrator, or makes an assignment for the benefit of creditors, or suffers or permits the entry of any order adjudicating it to be bankrupt or insolvent and such order is not discharged within 30 days, or takes any equivalent or similar action in consequence of debt in any jurisdiction; or (ii) the other party materially breaches any of the provisions of this Agreement, and such breach is not cured within 45 days after the giving of written notice requiring the breach to be remedied; provided, that in the case of a failure of the Company to make payments in accordance with the terms of this Agreement, Noramco may terminate this Agreement if such payment breach is not cured within 30 days of receipt of notice of non-payment from Noramco. In addition, either Party may terminate this Agreement at any time upon four (4) months prior written notice to Noramco. In the event of termination, the Company shall pay Noramco for all Services performed up to the date of termination and all non-cancelable commitments made specifically in performance of the master development and clinical supply agreement.

[Table of Contents](#)

**EMERALD BIOSCIENCE, INC. AND SUBSIDIARY
CONDENSED CONSOLIDATED BALANCE SHEETS**

	June 30, 2019	December 31, 2018
	<u>(Unaudited)</u>	<u>(Note 1)</u>
ASSETS		
Current assets		
Cash	\$ 2,807,826	\$ 1,853,373
Restricted cash	4,512	4,512
Prepaid expenses	262,272	93,193
Other current assets	2,609	2,609
Total current assets	<u>3,077,219</u>	<u>1,953,687</u>
Property and equipment, net	2,714	3,445
Total assets	<u>\$ 3,079,933</u>	<u>\$ 1,957,132</u>
LIABILITIES AND STOCKHOLDERS' EQUITY (DEFICIT)		
Current liabilities		
Accounts payable	\$ 73,459	\$ 15,597
Other current liabilities	366,955	184,461
Derivative liabilities	10,662,548	15,738,913
Total current liabilities	<u>11,102,962</u>	<u>15,938,971</u>
Noncurrent liabilities		
Convertible multi-draw credit agreement - related party, net of discount	3,102,036	1,360,960
Derivative liabilities, non-current	516,377	219,453
Total liabilities	<u>14,721,375</u>	<u>17,519,384</u>
Commitments and contingencies	-	-
Stockholders' deficit		
Convertible preferred stock, \$0.001 par value; 20,000,000 shares authorized; none issued and outstanding at June 30, 2019 and December 31, 2018	-	-
Common stock, \$0.001 par value; 500,000,000 shares authorized; 134,095,247 issued and outstanding at June 30, 2019 and December 31, 2018	134,095	133,908
Additional paid-in-capital	20,318,672	17,528,947
Accumulated deficit	(32,094,209)	(33,225,107)
Total stockholders' deficit	<u>(11,641,442)</u>	<u>(15,562,252)</u>
Total liabilities and stockholders' deficit	<u>\$ 3,079,933</u>	<u>\$ 1,957,132</u>

See accompanying notes to the condensed consolidated financial statements.

[Table of Contents](#)

EMERALD BIOSCIENCE, INC. AND SUBSIDIARY
CONDENSED CONSOLIDATED STATEMENTS OF COMPREHENSIVE INCOME (LOSS)
(UNAUDITED)

	For the Three Months Ended June 30,		For the Six Months Ended June 30,	
	2019	2018	2019	2018
Operating expenses				
Research and development	\$ 688,041	\$ -	\$ 1,009,026	\$ 25,000
General and administrative	1,082,846	1,080,190	2,276,928	2,306,551
Total operating expenses	<u>1,770,887</u>	<u>1,080,190</u>	<u>3,285,954</u>	<u>2,331,551</u>
Operating loss	<u>(1,770,887)</u>	<u>(1,080,190)</u>	<u>(3,285,954)</u>	<u>(2,331,551)</u>
Other expense (income)				
Change in fair value of derivative liabilities	(17,971,742)	1,580,242	(5,151,124)	602,749
Fair value of derivative liabilities in excess of proceeds	-	-	322,644	7,174,634
Financing transaction costs	-	-	-	137,191
Loss on extinguishment of secured convertible promissory note - related party	-	-	-	590,392
Interest expense	293,965	-	410,028	37,708
Interest income	-	(74)	-	(74)
	<u>(17,677,777)</u>	<u>1,580,168</u>	<u>(4,418,452)</u>	<u>8,542,600</u>
Income (loss) before income taxes	<u>15,906,890</u>	<u>(2,660,358)</u>	<u>1,132,498</u>	<u>(10,874,151)</u>
Provision for income taxes	1,600	1,642	1,600	1,642
Net income (loss) and comprehensive income (loss)	<u>\$ 15,905,290</u>	<u>\$ (2,662,000)</u>	<u>\$ 1,130,898</u>	<u>\$ (10,875,793)</u>
Earnings (loss) per common share:				
Basic	\$ 0.12	\$ (0.02)	\$ 0.01	\$ (0.10)
Diluted	\$ 0.08	\$ (0.02)	\$ 0.01	\$ (0.10)
Weighted average shares of common stock outstanding used to compute earnings per share:				
Basic	132,923,037	130,668,887	132,826,677	109,767,054
Diluted	<u>189,094,958</u>	<u>130,668,887</u>	<u>172,058,053</u>	<u>109,767,054</u>

See accompanying notes to the condensed consolidated financial statements.

[Table of Contents](#)

EMERALD BIOSCIENCE, INC. AND SUBSIDIARY
CONDENSED CONSOLIDATED STATEMENTS OF CASH FLOWS
(UNAUDITED)

	For the Six Months Ended June 30,	
	2019	2018
Cash flows from operating activities:		
Net income (loss)	\$ 1,130,898	\$ (10,875,793)
Adjustments to reconcile net income (loss) to net cash used in operating activities:		
Depreciation	731	813
Stock-based compensation expense	344,577	330,212
Change in fair value of derivative liabilities	(5,151,124)	602,749
Fair value of derivative liabilities in excess of proceeds	322,644	7,174,634
Loss on extinguishment of secured convertible promissory note - related party	-	590,392
Amortization of debt discount	244,751	34,608
Changes in assets and liabilities:		
Prepaid expenses	(169,079)	135,907
Other current assets	-	(2,609)
Accounts payable	57,862	(89,001)
Accounts payable to related party	-	65,000
Other current liabilities	182,494	(79,487)
Net cash used in operating activities	<u>(3,036,246)</u>	<u>(2,112,575)</u>
Cash flows from investing activities:		
Purchases of property and equipment	-	(4,385)
Net cash used in investing activities	<u>-</u>	<u>(4,385)</u>
Cash flows from financing activities:		
Proceeds from Common stock issuance, net of \$16,901 issuance costs	-	3,233,099
Proceeds from Series B warrant exercises	-	98,700
Proceeds from secured convertible promissory note - related party	-	400,000
Proceeds from convertible multi-draw credit agreement, net of \$9,301 issuance costs	3,990,699	-
Net cash provided by financing activities	<u>3,990,699</u>	<u>3,731,799</u>
Net increase in cash and restricted cash	954,453	1,614,839
Cash and restricted cash, beginning of period	\$ 1,857,885	\$ 264,383
Cash and restricted cash, end of period	\$ 2,812,338	\$ 1,879,222
<i>Supplemental disclosures of cash-flow information:</i>		
Reconciliation of cash and restricted cash:		
Cash	\$ 2,807,826	\$ 1,874,720
Restricted cash	4,512	4,502
Total cash and restricted cash shown in the consolidated statements of cash flows	<u>\$ 2,812,338</u>	<u>\$ 1,879,222</u>
Cash paid during the period for:		
Interest	\$ 165,277	\$ -
Income taxes	1,600	1,600

Supplemental disclosures of non-cash financing activities:

Conversion of outstanding preferred stock into common stock	\$	-	\$	1,947,227
Conversion of outstanding preferred stock subject to redemption into common stock		-		828,916
Reclassification of warrant liabilities to equity from exercise of warrants		144,375		1,301,866
Fair value of common stock issued in extinguishment of convertible debt		-		1,710,000
Fair value of warrants issued in connection with financings		-		10,424,634
Proceeds allocated to equity classified warrants issued with convertible multi-draw credit agreement		716,110		-
Fair value of compound derivative liability bifurcated from convertible multi-draw credit agreement		193,414		-
Beneficial conversion feature on convertible multi-draw credit agreement		1,584,850		-

See accompanying notes to the condensed consolidated financial statements.

[Table of Contents](#)

EMERALD BIOSCIENCE, INC. AND SUBSIDIARY
CONDENSED CONSOLIDATED STATEMENTS OF STOCKHOLDERS' DEFICIT
(UNAUDITED)

	Convertible Series F Preferred Stock		Convertible Series D Preferred Stock		Redeemable Convertible Series B Preferred Stock		Stockholders' Deficit				
							Common Stock		Additional Paid-In Capital	Accumulated Deficit	Total Stockholders Deficit
	Shares	Amounts	Shares	Amounts	Shares	Amounts	Shares	Amounts			
Balance, January 1, 2018	2,000	\$ 1,777,781	200	\$ 169,447	2,833.55	\$ 822,201	33,622,829	\$ 33,623	\$ 10,427,742	\$ (14,030,871)	\$ (3,569,506)

Stock based compensation expense	-	-	-	-	-	-	2,500,000	2,500	227,109	-	229,609
Issuance of common stock net of issuance costs of \$16,900	-	-	-	-	-	-	32,500,000	32,500	(32,500)	-	-
Conversion of Series B Preferred Stock and conversion liability into common stock at \$0.10 and \$0.001 per share	-	-	-	-	(2,834)	(822,201)	28,385,000	28,385	800,530	-	828,915
Conversion of Series D Preferred Stock to common stock at \$0.10 per share	-	-	(200)	(169,447)	-	-	2,000,000	2,000	167,447	-	169,447
Conversion of Series F Preferred Stock to common stock at \$0.10 per share	(2,000)	(1,777,781)	-	-	-	-	20,000,000	20,000	1,757,781	-	1,777,781
Conversion of secured convertible promissory note - related party and accrued interest	-	-	-	-	-	-	9,000,000	9,000	1,691,878	-	1,700,878
Series B warrant exercises	-	-	-	-	-	-	4,406,250	4,406	1,318,284	-	1,322,690
Net loss for the three months ended March 31, 2018	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	(8,213,793)	(8,213,793)
Balance, March 31, 2018	-	\$ -	-	\$ -	-	\$ -	132,414,079	\$ 132,414	\$ 16,358,271	\$ (22,244,664)	\$ (5,753,979)
Stock based compensation expense	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	100,603	-	100,603
Common stock issuance costs paid of \$7,778	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	(7,778)	-	(7,778)
Series B warrant exercises	-	-	-	-	-	-	287,500	288	77,587	-	77,875
Net loss for the three months ended June 30, 2018	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	(2,662,000)	(2,662,000)
Balance, June 30, 2018	-	\$ -	-	\$ -	-	\$ -	132,701,579	\$ 132,702	\$ 16,528,683	\$ (24,906,664)	\$ (8,245,279)

See accompanying notes to the condensed consolidated financial statements.

[Table of Contents](#)

EMERALD BIOSCIENCE, INC. AND SUBSIDIARY
CONDENSED CONSOLIDATED STATEMENTS OF STOCKHOLDERS' DEFICIT
(UNAUDITED)

	Convertible Series F Preferred Stock		Convertible Series D Preferred Stock		Redeemable Convertible Series B Preferred Stock		Stockholders' Deficit			Total Stockholders Deficit	
	Shares	Amounts	Shares	Amounts	Shares	Amounts	Common Stock	Additional Paid-In Capital	Accumulated Deficit		
							Shares	Amounts			
Balance, January 1, 2019	-	\$ -	-	\$ -	-	\$ -	133,907,747	\$ 133,908	\$ 17,528,947	\$ (33,225,107)	\$ (15,562,252)
Stock based compensation expense	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	171,493	-	171,493
Warrants issued in connection with convertible multi-draw credit agreement, related party	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	716,110	-	716,110
Beneficial conversion feature in connection with convertible multi-draw credit agreement - related party	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	1,584,850	-	1,584,850

Net loss for the three months ended March 31, 2019	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	(14,774,392)	(14,774,392)
Balance, March 31, 2019	-	\$ -	-	\$ -	-	\$ -	-	133,907,747	\$ 133,908	\$ 20,001,400	\$ (47,999,499)	\$ (27,864,191)
Stock based compensation expense	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	173,084	-	173,084
Series B warrant exercises	-	-	-	-	-	-	187,500	187	144,188	-	-	144,375
Net income for the three months ended June 30, 2019	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	15,905,290	15,905,290
Balance, June 30, 2019	-	\$ -	-	\$ -	-	\$ -	-	134,095,247	\$ 134,095	\$ 20,318,672	\$ (32,094,209)	\$ (11,641,442)

See accompanying notes to the condensed consolidated financial statements.

[Table of Contents](#)

EMERALD BIOSCIENCE, INC. AND SUBSIDIARY
NOTES TO THE CONDENSED CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS
(UNAUDITED)

1. Nature of Operations and Business Activities

Nature of Operations

Emerald Bioscience, Inc. (the “Company”) was initially incorporated in Nevada on March 16, 2011 as Load Guard Logistics, Inc. On October 31, 2014, the Company closed a reverse merger transaction (the “Merger”) pursuant to which Nemus, a California corporation (“Nemus Sub”), became the Company’s wholly-owned subsidiary, and the Company assumed the operations of Nemus Sub. Nemus Sub was incorporated in the State of California on July 17, 2012. On November 3, 2014, the Company changed its name to Nemus Bioscience, Inc. by merging with Nemus Sub.

On February 11, 2019, the Company’s Board of Directors (the “Board”) and majority stockholder unanimously approved an amendment to the Company’s articles of incorporation to change the name of the Company to Emerald Bioscience, Inc. Effective March 25, 2019, we filed a Certificate of Amendment with the Nevada Secretary of State changing the Company’s name to Emerald Bioscience, Inc.

Emerald Bioscience, Inc. is a biopharmaceutical company located in Long Beach, California that plans to research, develop and commercialize therapeutics derived from cannabinoids through several license agreements with the University of Mississippi (“UM”). UM is the only entity federally permitted and licensed to cultivate cannabis for research purposes in the United States.

In January 2018, the Company entered into a securities purchase agreement with Emerald Health Sciences, Inc. (“Emerald Health Sciences”) discussed in Note 5, pursuant to which Emerald Health Sciences purchased a majority of the equity interest in the Company, resulting in a change in control. As part of the transaction, the Company’s Board members, with the exception of Dr. Brian Murphy, the Company’s CEO/CMO, tendered their resignation and Emerald Health Sciences appointed two new nominees to the Board. Later, in October 2018, the Board appointed Dr. Avtar Dhillon, the Chairman, Chief Executive Officer and President of Emerald Health Sciences, as the Executive Chairman of the Company’s Board.

As of June 30, 2019, the Company has devoted substantially all its efforts to securing product licenses, carrying out research and development, building infrastructure and raising capital. The Company has not yet realized revenue from its planned principal operations and is a number of years from potentially being able to do so.

Liquidity and Going Concern

The Company has incurred operating losses and negative cash flows from operations since inception and as of June 30, 2019, had an accumulated deficit of \$32,094,209, a stockholders' deficit of \$11,641,442 and a working capital deficit of \$8,025,743. The Company anticipates that it will continue to incur net losses into the foreseeable future in order to advance and develop a number of potential drug candidates into preclinical and clinical development activities and support its corporate infrastructure which includes the costs associated with being a public company. As of June 30, 2019, the Company had cash in the amount of \$2,807,826, as compared to \$1,853,373 in cash as of December 31, 2018. This increase is primarily attributable to the proceeds of \$4,000,000 from the Credit Agreement (defined below) with Emerald Health Sciences during the first quarter of 2019. However, without additional funding management believes that the Company will not have enough funds to meet its obligations within one year from the date the Condensed Consolidated Financial Statements are issued. These conditions give rise to substantial doubt as to the Company's ability to continue as a going concern. The accompanying Condensed Consolidated Financial Statements do not include any adjustments that might result from the outcome of this uncertainty.

[Table of Contents](#)

The Company's continued existence is dependent on its ability to raise additional sufficient funding to cover operating expenses and to invest in research and development activities. On October 5, 2018, the Company entered into a Multi Draw Credit Agreement (the "Credit Agreement") with Emerald Health Sciences (See Note 4). Under the Credit Agreement the Company can draw down up to \$20,000,000 from time to time in principal amounts of at least \$250,000. The drawdowns are subject to approval by the Company's Board, which is controlled by the directors and principal executive officer of Emerald Health Sciences.

The Company plans to continue to pursue funding through public or private equity or debt financings, licensing arrangements, asset sales, government grants or other arrangements. However, the Company cannot provide any assurances that such additional funds will be available on reasonable terms, or at all. If the Company raises additional funds by issuing equity securities, substantial dilution to existing stockholders would result. If the Company is unable to secure adequate additional funding, the Company may be forced to reduce spending, extend payment terms with suppliers, liquidate assets where possible, suspend or curtail planned programs or cease operations.

2. Summary of Significant Accounting Policies

Basis of Presentation

In the opinion of management, the accompanying Unaudited Condensed Consolidated Financial Statements have been prepared on a consistent basis with the Company's Audited Consolidated Financial Statements for the fiscal year ended December 31, 2018, and include all adjustments, consisting of only normal recurring adjustments, necessary to fairly state the information set forth herein. The Condensed Consolidated Financial Statements have been prepared in accordance with the rules and regulations of the Securities and Exchange Commission ("SEC") and therefore, omit certain information and footnote disclosure necessary to present the financial statements in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles in the United States ("GAAP").

The results of operations for the three and six months ended June 30, 2019 are not necessarily indicative of the results to be expected for the year ended December 31, 2019 or any future periods. The Condensed Consolidated Balance sheet as of December 31, 2018 was derived from the Company's audited financial statements as of December 31, 2018, which are included in the Company's Annual Report on Form 10-K filed with the SEC on March 14, 2019. The unaudited financial statements included in this Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q should be read in conjunction with the audited consolidated financial statements and notes thereto included in the Company's Annual Report on Form 10-K for the fiscal year ended December 31, 2018 filed with the SEC on March 14, 2019, which includes a broader discussion of the Company's business and the risks inherent therein.

Certain reclassifications have been made to prior year amounts to conform to the current period's presentation. Such reclassifications had no net effect on total assets, total liabilities, total stockholders' deficit, net losses and cash flows.

Use of Estimates

The preparation of the Unaudited Condensed Consolidated Financial Statements in conformity with GAAP requires management to make estimates and assumptions that affect the reported amounts of assets and liabilities and disclosure of contingent assets and liabilities at the date of the Condensed Consolidated Financial Statements and the reported amounts of income and expense during the reporting period. Actual results could differ from those estimates. The most significant accounting estimates inherent in the preparation of our financial statements include estimates as to the appropriate carrying value of certain assets and liabilities which are not readily apparent from other sources. Such estimates and judgments are utilized for stock-based compensation expense and equity securities, derivative liabilities and debt with embedded features.

[Table of Contents](#)

Risks and Uncertainties

The Company's operations are subject to a number of risks and uncertainties, including but not limited to, changes in the general economy, the size and growth of the potential markets for any of the Company's product candidates, results of research and development activities, uncertainties surrounding regulatory developments in the United States and the Company's ability to attract new funding.

Fair Value Measurements

Certain assets and liabilities are carried at fair value under GAAP. Fair value is defined as the exchange price that would be received for an asset or paid to transfer a liability (the "exit price") in the principal or most advantageous market for the asset or liability in an orderly transaction between market participants on the measurement date. Valuation techniques used to measure fair value must maximize the use of observable inputs and minimize the use of unobservable inputs. A fair value hierarchy based on three levels of inputs, of which the first two are considered observable and the last is considered unobservable, is used to measure fair value:

- Level 1: Valuations for assets and liabilities traded in active markets from readily available pricing sources such as quoted prices in active markets for identical assets or liabilities.
- Level 2: Observable inputs (other than Level 1 quoted prices) such as quoted prices in active markets for similar assets or liabilities, quoted prices in markets that are not active for identical or similar assets or liabilities, or other inputs that are observable or can be corroborated by observable market data.
- Level 3: Unobservable inputs that are supported by little or no market activity and that are significant to determining the fair value of the assets or liabilities, including pricing models, discounted cash flow methodologies and similar techniques.

The carrying values of our financial instruments, with the exception of the convertible multi draw credit agreement - related party and derivative liabilities, including, cash, prepaid expenses, accounts payable, and other current liabilities approximate their fair value due to the short maturities of these

financial instruments. The derivative liabilities were valued on a recurring basis utilizing Level 3 inputs.

Advances under the convertible multi draw credit agreement - related party, noncurrent are not recorded at fair value. However, fair value can be approximated and disclosed utilizing Level 3 inputs and independent third-party valuation techniques (See Note 3). At June 30, 2019, the fair value of the advances under the Credit Agreement were estimated at \$7,419,463. The carrying amount of the liability at June 30, 2019 is \$3,102,036 and is included in Convertible multi draw credit agreement - related party, net of discount in the Company's balance sheets.

Convertible Instruments

The Company accounts for hybrid contracts with embedded conversion features in accordance with GAAP. ASC 815, *Derivatives and Hedging Activities* ("ASC 815") requires companies to bifurcate conversion options from their host instruments and account for them as free standing derivative financial instruments according to certain criteria. The criteria includes circumstances in which (a) the economic characteristics and risks of the embedded derivative instrument are not clearly and closely related to the economic characteristics and risks of the host contract, (b) the hybrid instrument that embodies both the embedded derivative instrument and the host contract is not re-measured at fair value under otherwise applicable generally accepted accounting principles with changes in fair value reported in earnings as they occur and (c) a separate instrument with the same terms as the embedded derivative instrument would be considered a derivative instrument.

[Table of Contents](#)

The Company accounts for convertible debt instruments with embedded conversion features in accordance with ASC 470-20, *Debt with Conversion and Other Options* (“ASC 470-20”) if it’s determined that the conversion feature should not be bifurcated from their host instruments. Under ASC 470-20, the Company records, when necessary, discounts to convertible notes for the intrinsic value of conversion options embedded in debt instruments based upon the difference between the fair value of the underlying common stock at the commitment date and the embedded effective conversion price. When the Company determines that the embedded conversion option should be bifurcated from its host instrument, the embedded feature is accounted for in accordance with ASC 815. Under ASC 815, a portion of the proceeds received upon the issuance of the hybrid contract is allocated to the fair value of the derivative. The derivative is subsequently marked to market at each reporting date based on current fair value, with the changes in fair value reported in results of operations.

The Company also follows ASC 480-10, *Distinguishing Liabilities from Equity* (“ASC 480-10”) when evaluating the accounting for its hybrid instruments. A financial instrument that embodies an unconditional obligation, or a financial instrument other than an outstanding share that embodies a conditional obligation, that the issuer must or may settle by issuing a variable number of its equity shares shall be classified as a liability (or an asset in some circumstances) if, at inception, the monetary value of the obligation is based solely or predominantly on any one of the following: (a) a fixed monetary amount known at inception (for example, a payable settled with a variable number of the issuer’s equity shares); (b) variations in something other than the fair value of the issuer’s equity shares (for example, a financial instrument indexed to the Standard and Poor’s S&P 500 Index and settled with a variable number of the issuer’s equity shares); or (c) variations inversely related to changes in the fair value of the issuer’s equity shares (for

example, a written put option that could be net share settled). Hybrid instruments meeting these criteria are not further evaluated for any embedded derivatives and are carried as a liability at fair value at each balance sheet date with a re-measurement reported other (income) expense in the accompanying Condensed Consolidated Statements of Comprehensive Income (Loss).

When determining short-term vs. long-term classification of derivative liabilities, the Company first evaluates the instruments' exercise provisions. Generally, if a derivative is a liability and exercisable within one year, it will be classified as short-term. However, because of the unique provisions and circumstances that may impact the accounting for derivative instruments, the Company carefully evaluates all factors that could potentially restrict the instrument from being exercised or create a situation where exercise would be considered remote. The Company re-evaluates its derivative liabilities at each reporting period end and makes updates for any changes in facts and circumstances that may impact classification.

Warrants Issued in Connection with Financings

The Company generally accounts for warrants issued in connection with debt and equity financings as a component of equity, unless the warrants include a conditional obligation to issue a variable number of shares or there is a deemed possibility that the Company may need to settle the warrants in cash. For warrants issued with a conditional obligation to issue a variable number of shares or the deemed possibility of a cash settlement, the Company records the fair value of the warrants as a liability at each balance sheet date and records changes in fair value in other (income) expense in the Condensed Consolidated Statements of Comprehensive Income (Loss).

Debt Issuance Costs and Interest

Discounts related to bifurcated derivatives, freestanding instruments issued in bundled transactions and issuance costs are recorded as a reduction to the carrying value of the debt and amortized over the life of the debt using the effective interest method. The Company makes changes to the effective interest rate, as necessary, on a prospective basis. For debt facilities that provide for multiple advances, the Company initially defers any issuance costs until the first advance is made and then amortizes the costs over the life of the facility.

Research and Development Expenses and Licensed Technology

Research and development costs are expensed when incurred. These costs may consist of external research and development expenses incurred under agreements with third-party contract research organizations and investigative sites, third-party manufacturing organizations and consultants; license fees; employee-related expenses, which include salaries and benefits for the personnel involved in our preclinical and clinical drug development activities; and facilities expense, depreciation and other allocated expenses; and equipment and laboratory supplies.

[Table of Contents](#)

Costs incurred for the rights to use licensed technologies in the research and development process, including licensing fees and milestone payments, are charged to research and development expense as incurred in situations where the Company has not identified an alternative future use for the acquired rights, and are capitalized in situations where there is an identified alternative future use. No cost associated with the use of licensed technologies has been capitalized to date.

Stock-Based Compensation for Employees

Stock-based compensation cost is estimated at the grant date based on the fair value of the award, and the cost is recognized as expense ratably over the vesting period with forfeitures accounted for as they occur. The Company uses the Black-Scholes Merton option pricing model for estimating the grant date fair value of stock options using the following assumptions:

- Volatility - Stock price volatility is estimated over the expected term based on a blended rate of industry peers and the Company's actual stock volatility adjusted for periods in which significant financial variability was identified.
- Expected term - The expected term is based on a simplified method which defines the life as the weighted average of the contractual term of the options and the vesting period for each award.
- Risk-free rate - The risk-free interest rate for the expected term of the option is based on the average market rate on U.S. treasury securities in effect during the period in which the awards were granted.
- Dividends - The dividend yield assumption is based on our history and expectation of paying no dividends in the foreseeable future.

Earnings/ Loss Per Share of Common Stock

The Company applies FASB ASC No. 260, *Earnings per Share*. The basic earnings or net loss per share of common stock is computed by dividing loss available to common stockholders by the weighted-average number of shares of common stock outstanding for the period. The diluted earnings or net loss per share of common stock is computed by giving effect to all potential common stock equivalents outstanding for the period determined using the treasury stock method. For purposes of this calculation, convertible preferred stock, options to purchase common stock, restricted stock subject to vesting, warrants to purchase common stock and common shares underlying convertible debt instruments were considered to be common stock equivalents. The following outstanding shares of common stock equivalents were excluded from the computation of diluted earnings per share of common stock for the periods presented because including them would have been antidilutive:

	Three Months Ended June 30, (Unaudited)		Six Months Ended June 30, (Unaudited)	
	2019	2018	2019	2018
Stock options	2,411,846	1,850,073	2,814,505	1,850,073
Unvested restricted stock	209,055	1,918,501	237,798	1,918,501
Common shares underlying convertible debt	-	-	11,722,222	-
Warrants	18,844,002	51,155,750	20,353,145	51,155,750

Recent Accounting Pronouncements

In November 2018, the FASB issued ASU No. 2018-08 *Collaborative Arrangements* (Topic 808) intended to improve financial reporting around collaborative arrangements and align the current guidance under ASC 808 with ASC 606 *Revenue from Contracts with Customers*. The ASU affects all companies that enter into collaborative arrangements. The ASU clarifies when certain transactions between collaborative arrangement participants should be accounted for as revenue under Topic 606 and changes certain presentation requirements for transactions with collaborative arrangement participants that are not directly related to sales to third parties. For public companies, the standard is effective for fiscal years beginning after December 15, 2019 and interim periods therein. Earlier adoption is permitted for any annual or interim period for which consolidated financial statements have not yet been issued. The Company has not entered into any collaborative arrangements and therefore does not currently expect the adoption of this standard to have a material effect on its Condensed Consolidated Financial Statements. The Company plans to adopt this ASU either on the effective date of January 1, 2020 or possibly in an earlier period if a collaborative arrangement is entered. Upon adoption, the Company will utilize the retrospective transition approach, as prescribed within this ASU.

[Table of Contents](#)

Recently Adopted Accounting Standards

In February 2016, the FASB issued ASU No. 2016-02 *Leases* (Topic 842). In January, July and December 2018, and in March 2019, the FASB issued additional amendments to the new lease guidance relating to, transition, and clarification. This ASU requires most lessees to recognize right of use assets and lease liabilities and recognize expenses in a manner similar to current accounting standards. For public companies, the standard is effective for fiscal years beginning after December 15, 2018 and interim periods therein. The Company adopted this ASU on the effective date of January 1, 2019. Pursuant to ASU 2018-11, issued in July 2018, the Company elected to use the effective date as of the date of application for transition. Upon adoption there was no cumulative effect recorded to the accumulated deficit, as the Company has no lease terms in excess of one year. The Company has elected the short-term lease practical expedient under the ASU which resulted in no change to the current recognition accounting under ASC 840.

In July 2017, the FASB issued ASU 2017-11, *Earnings Per Share (Topic 260), Distinguishing Liabilities from Equity (Topic 480) and Derivatives and Hedging (Topic 815): I. Accounting for Certain Financial Instruments with Down Round Features; II. Replacement of the Indefinite Deferral for Mandatorily Redeemable Financial Instruments of Certain Nonpublic Entities and Certain Mandatorily Redeemable Noncontrolling Interests with a Scope Exception* (“ASU 2017-11”). Part I of this update addresses the complexity of accounting for certain financial instruments with down round features. Down round features are features of certain equity-linked instruments (or embedded features) that result in the strike price being reduced on the basis of the pricing of future equity offerings. Current accounting guidance creates cost and complexity for entities that issue financial instruments (such as warrants and convertible instruments) with down round features that require fair value measurement of the entire instrument or conversion option. Part II of this update addresses the difficulty of navigating *Topic 480, Distinguishing Liabilities from Equity*, because of the existence of extensive pending content in the FASB Accounting Standards Codification. This pending content is the result of the indefinite deferral of accounting requirements about mandatorily redeemable financial instruments of certain nonpublic entities and certain mandatorily redeemable non-controlling interests. The amendments in Part II of this update do not have an accounting effect. The Company adopted this ASU on the effective date of January 1, 2019. The adoption of this standard using a retrospective cumulative-effect adjustment approach had no impact to the Company’s accumulated deficit. The outstanding warrants

issued in the Emerald Financing contain a down-round provision. However, in the absence of the down-round these warrants would require liability accounting and be considered derivatives due to the presence of a put option (See Note 3). As such, the adoption of ASU 2017-11 on January 1, 2019 did not have an impact on the Company's Condensed Consolidated Financial Statements and Notes thereto.

3. Warrants and Derivative Liabilities

Warrants

There are significant judgments and estimates inherent in the determination of the fair value of the Company's warrants. These judgments and estimates included the assumptions regarding its future operating performance, the time to completing a liquidity event and the determination of the appropriate valuation methods. If the Company had made different assumptions, the fair value of the warrants could have been significantly different (See Note 2).

[Table of Contents](#)

Warrants vested and outstanding as of June 30, 2019 are summarized as follows:

Source	Exercise Price	Term (Years)	Amount Vested and Outstanding
Pre 2015 Common Stock Warrants	\$ 1.00	6-10	4,000,000
2015 Common Stock Warrants	\$ 1.15-\$5.00	5-10	442,000
2015 Series B Financing			
Common Stock Warrants to Series B Stockholders	\$ 0.00	5	1,031,250
2016 Common Stock Warrants to Service Providers	\$ 1.15	10	40,000

2016 Series C Common Stock Warrants to Placement Agent	\$	0.40	5	125,000
2017 Series D Common Stock Warrants to Placement Agent	\$	0.25	5	480,000
2017 Common Stock Warrants to Service Provider	\$	0.41	5	125,000
2018 Emerald Financing Warrants	\$	0.10	5	44,200,000
Emerald Multi Draw Credit Agreement Warrants	\$	0.50	5	7,500,000
Total warrants vested and outstanding as of June 30, 2019				57,943,250

Emerald Multi Draw Credit Agreement Warrants

During the six months ended June 30, 2019, the Company issued 5,000,000 fully vested common stock warrants to Emerald Health Sciences, in conjunction with advances under the Credit Agreement discussed below (See Note 4). The warrants are equity classified at issuance and the Company allocated an aggregate of \$716,110 of the gross proceeds to the warrants on a relative fair value basis. The proceeds allocated to the warrants were recorded as discounts to each advance and are being amortized over the term of the debt. The warrants vested immediately and had an estimated aggregate fair value of \$1,830,573 utilizing the Black-Scholes option pricing model with the following assumptions:

	At Issuance
Dividend yield	0.00%
Volatility factor	91.6-92.1
Risk-free interest rate	2.23-2.51
Expected term (years)	5.0
Underlying common stock price	\$ 0.33-0.69

2018 Emerald Financing Warrants

In January and February 2018, the Company issued an aggregate of 40,800,000 and 3,400,000 fully vested common stock warrants to Emerald Health Sciences and an accredited investor, respectively, in conjunction with the Emerald Financing discussed below (See Note 5). The Company reviewed the warrants for liability or equity classification under the guidance of ASC 480-10, *Distinguishing Liabilities from Equity*, and concluded that these warrants should be classified as liabilities. See additional discussion below, *Derivative Liabilities- Emerald Financing Warrant Liability*.

[Table of Contents](#)

Derivative Liabilities

The following tables summarize the activity of derivative liabilities for the periods indicated:

	Six Months Ended June 30, 2019				
	December 31, 2018, Fair Value of Derivative Liabilities	Fair Value of Derivative Liabilities Issued	Change in Fair value of Derivative Liabilities	Reclassification of Derivatives to Equity	June 30, 2019, Fair Value of Derivative Liabilities
Emerald Multi Draw Credit Agreement - compound derivative liability (1)	\$ 219,453	\$ 516,058	\$ (219,134)	\$ -	\$ 516,377
Emerald Financing - warrant liability (2)	15,251,413	-	(4,887,929)	-	10,363,484
Series B - warrant liability (3)	487,500	-	(44,061)	(144,375)	299,064
Total derivative liabilities	\$ 15,958,366	\$ 516,058	\$ (5,151,124)	\$ (144,375)	\$ 11,178,925
Less, noncurrent portion of derivative liabilities	(219,453)				(516,377)
Current balance of derivative liabilities	\$ 15,738,913				\$ 10,662,548

	Six Months Ended June 30, 2018				
	December 31, 2017, Fair Value of Derivative Liabilities	Fair Value of Derivative Liabilities Issued	Change in Fair value of Derivative Liabilities	Reclassification of Derivatives to Equity	June 30, 2018, Fair Value of Derivative Liabilities
Emerald Financing - warrant liability (2)	\$ -	\$ 10,424,634	\$ (814,071)	\$ -	\$ 9,610,563
Series B - warrant liability (3)	551,322	-	1,231,820	(1,301,866)	481,276

Emerald Convertible Promissory Note - conversion liability (4)	265,000	360,000	185,000	(810,000)	-
Series B Preferred Stock - conversion liability (5)	6,715	-	-	(6,715)	-
Total derivative liabilities	\$ 823,037	\$ 10,784,634	\$ 602,749	\$ (2,118,581)	\$ 10,091,839
Less, noncurrent portion of derivative liabilities	(551,322)				-
Current balance of derivative liabilities	\$ 271,715				\$ 10,091,839

[Table of Contents](#)

Emerald Multi Draw Credit Agreement Compound Derivative Liability (1)

In connection with the advances under the Credit Agreement (See Note 4), the Company bifurcated a compound derivative liability related to a contingent interest feature and acceleration upon default provision (contingent put option) provided to Emerald Health Sciences. The Company's estimate of fair value of the compound derivative liability was determined by using a differential cash flows valuation model, wherein the fair value of the underlying debt facility and its conversion right are estimated both with and without the presence of the contingent interest feature, holding all other assumptions constant.

The resulting difference between the estimated fair values in both scenarios is the estimated fair value of the compound derivative. The fair value of the underlying debt facility is estimated by calculating the expected cash flows with consideration of the estimated probability of a change in control transaction, defined as an event of default by the agreement, and applying the expected default interest rate from the date of such default through maturity. The expected cash flows are then discounted back to the reporting date using a benchmark market yield. The conversion right component of the compound derivative is measured using a standard Black-Scholes model for each payment period. Because Emerald Health Sciences would forgo the contingent interest if the contingent put option was exercised upon an event of default, the value ascribed to the contingent put option within the compound derivative is de minimis.

Emerald Financing Warrant Liability (2)

In January and February 2018, the Company issued 44,200,000 warrants to purchase common stock in conjunction with the Emerald Financing discussed above. The warrants vest immediately and have an exercise price of \$0.10 per share with a term of five years and are exercisable in cash or through a cashless exercise provision. The warrants contain an anti-dilution protection feature provided to the investors if the Company subsequently issues or sells any shares of common stock, stock options, or convertible securities at a price less than the exercise price of \$0.10. The exercise price is automatically adjusted down to the price of the instrument being issued. In addition, the warrants contain a contingent put option if the Company undergoes a subsequent financing that results in a change in control. The warrant holders also have the right to participate in subsequent financing transactions on an as-if converted basis.

The Company reviewed the warrants for liability or equity classification under the guidance of ASC 480-10, *Distinguishing Liabilities from Equity*, and concluded that the warrants should be classified as a liability and re-measured to fair value at the end of each reporting period. The Company also reviewed the warrants under ASC 815, *Derivatives and Hedging/Contracts in Entity's Own Equity*, and determined that the warrants also meet the definition of a derivative. With the assistance of a third-party valuation specialist, the Company valued the warrant liabilities utilizing the Monte Carlo valuation method pursuant to the accounting guidance of ASC 820-10, *Fair Value Measurements*. On the closing dates, the Company estimated that the fair value of the warrants issued on January 19, 2018 and February 16, 2018 was \$4,700,000 and \$5,700,000, respectively.

The warrant liabilities have been valued using Monte Carlo simulations conducted at the closing dates of January 19, 2018 and February 16, 2018 and at the balance sheet dates using the following assumptions:

	June 30, 2019	December 31, 2018	At Issuance
Dividend yield	0.00%	0.00%	0.00%
Volatility factor	90.4-90.8	92.1-92.4	70.0%
Risk-free interest rate	1.70%	2.49%	2.45-2.60%
Expected term (years)	3.56-3.64	4.05-4.13	5.0
Underlying common stock price	\$ 0.29	\$ 0.40	\$ 0.29-0.30

[Table of Contents](#)

Because fair value assigned to the warrants exceeded the proceeds received in the Emerald Financing, none of the consideration was allocated to common stock and the Company recorded an adjustment for the difference between the fair value of the warrant liabilities and the total proceeds received to other expense in the Condensed Consolidated Statements Comprehensive Income (Loss) for the six months ended June 30, 2018 as follows:

	Closing		Total
	January 2018	February 2018	
Initial Fair Value of Emerald Financing Warrant Liability	\$ 4,717,211	\$ 5,707,423	\$ 10,424,634
Less: Proceeds from Emerald Financing	1,500,000	1,750,000	3,250,000
Excess over proceeds adjustment	\$ 3,217,211	\$ 3,957,423	\$ 7,174,634

In addition, because the aggregate proceeds were allocated to the fair value of the Emerald Financing warrant liability, issuance costs totaling \$137,192 were charged to other expense during the six months ended June 30, 2018.

Series B Warrant Liability (3)

In conjunction with the Redeemable Convertible Series B Preferred Stock financing, the Company issued the 2015 Series B Financing Warrants originally exercisable at a price of \$1.15 per share. The warrants are exercisable in cash or through a cashless exercise provision and contain certain cash redemption rights. The Series B warrants also had a “down-round” protection feature if the Company subsequently issued or sold any shares of common stock, stock options, or convertible securities at a price less than the current exercise price. The down round provision was triggered and automatically adjusted down to \$0.10 on December 28, 2017, after the Company entered into the Convertible Promissory Note (See Note 4) and again to \$0.00 on January 19, 2018, as a result of the Emerald Financing (See Note 5). The strike price for these warrants is now permanently reset. However, because the remaining warrant holders still have certain cash redemption rights upon the occurrence of certain fundamental transactions, as defined in the Series B warrant agreements, the warrants continue to require liability classification. Subsequent to the repricing that occurred as a result of the Emerald Financing, the warrants have been valued using a Black Scholes Merton Option Pricing Model.

The Company reviewed the classification of the warrants as liabilities or equity under the guidance of ASC 480-10, *Distinguishing Liabilities from Equity*, and concluded that the Series B warrants should be classified as a liability. The Company then applied the fair value allocation methodology for allocating the proceeds of \$5,000,000 received from the Series B financing between the conversion liability and the warrants with the residual amount being allocated to the Series B Preferred Stock.

To compute the fair value of the warrants, the Company utilized the following assumptions in the Black Scholes Merton Option Pricing Model for the periods indicated:

	As of June 30, 2019	As of December 31, 2018
Dividend yield	0.00%	0.00%
Volatility factor	93.1%	93.0%
Risk-free interest rate	1.90%	2.79
Expected term (years)	1.14	1.64-1.65
Weighted average fair value of warrants	\$ 0.29	\$ 0.40

[Table of Contents](#)

Emerald Convertible Promissory Note Conversion Liability (4)

In connection with the Convertible Promissory Note (See Note 4), the Company bifurcated a conversion liability related to an embedded conversion feature with a down-round protection provision. The Company valued the conversion liability pursuant to the accounting guidance of ASC 820-10, *Fair Value Measurements*, as of the financing date of each closing utilizing the Black Scholes valuation model and the following assumptions:

	January 19, 2018	December 28, 2017
Dividend yield	0.00%	0.00%

Volatility factor	70.0%	70.0%
Risk-free interest rate	1.29%	1.39%
Expected term (years)	0.003	0.25
Underlying common stock price	\$ 0.19	\$ 0.15

The fair values of the conversion liabilities on December 28, 2017 and January 19, 2018 were \$265,000 and \$360,000, respectively. The change in value related to the conversion liability at December 31, 2017 was deemed immaterial due to no substantial change in the assumptions from issuance until year end. In connection with the Emerald Financing discussed in Note 5 below, the Convertible Promissory Note was converted, and the conversion liability was extinguished with the debt.

Series B Preferred Stock Conversion Liability (5)

On August 20, 2015, in connection with the Redeemable Convertible Series B Preferred Stock financing, the Company bifurcated a conversion liability related to a down-round protection provided to the Series B investors. The value of this embedded derivative was determined utilizing a “with and without” method by valuing the Series B Preferred Stock with and without the down round protection. During the first fiscal quarter of 2018, all the remaining Series B Preferred Stock was converted to common stock and as a result, the Series B conversion liability was reduced to zero. The reduction of this liability totaling \$6,715 was recorded to equity during the six months ended June 30, 2018.

[Table of Contents](#)

4. Convertible Debt - Related Party

The Company's Convertible Debt with Emerald Health Sciences consists of the following:

	As of June 30, 2019	As of December 31, 2018
Total principal value	\$ 6,000,000	\$ 2,000,000
Unamortized debt discount	(2,843,217)	(587,617)
Unamortized debt issuance costs	(54,747)	(51,423)
Carrying value of total convertible debt - related party	\$ 3,102,036	\$ 1,360,960
Less, noncurrent portion	(3,102,036)	(1,360,960)
Current convertible debt - related party	\$ -	\$ -

For the three and six months ended June 30, 2019 and 2018, the Company's interest expense consists of the following:

	Three Months Ended June 30,		Six Months Ended June 30,	
	2019	2018	2019	2018
Interest expense – stated rate	\$ 106,167	\$ -	\$ 165,277	\$ 3,100
Non-cash interest expense:				
Amortization of debt discount	184,313	-	238,293	34,608
Amortization of transaction costs	3,485	-	6,458	-
	<u>\$ 293,965</u>	<u>\$ -</u>	<u>\$ 410,028</u>	<u>\$ 37,708</u>

Multi Draw Credit Agreement

On October 5, 2018, the Company entered into the Credit Agreement with Emerald Health Sciences, a related party (See Note 8). The Credit Agreement provides for a credit facility to the Company of up to \$20,000,000 and is unsecured. Advances under the Credit Agreement bear interest at an annual rate of 7% (payable quarterly in arrears) and mature on October 5, 2022. At Emerald Health Sciences' election, advances and unpaid interest may be converted into common stock at a fixed conversion price of \$0.40, subject to customary adjustments for stock splits, stock dividends, recapitalizations, etc. As of June 30, 2019, the unused portion of the credit facility is \$14,000,000.

The Credit Agreement provides for customary events of default which may result in the acceleration of the maturity of the advances in addition to, but not limited to, cross acceleration to certain other indebtedness of the Company or a change in control. In the case of an event of default arising from specified events of bankruptcy or insolvency or reorganization, all outstanding advances will become due and payable immediately without further action or notice. If any other event of default under the Credit Agreement occurs or is continuing, Emerald Health Sciences may, by written notice, terminate its commitment to make any advances and/or declare all the advances with any other amounts payable due immediately. If any amount under the Credit Agreement is not paid when due, such overdue amount shall bear interest at an annual default interest rate of the applicable rate plus 10%, until such amount is paid in full.

In connection with each advance under the Credit Agreement, the Company agreed to issue to Emerald Health Sciences warrants to purchase shares of common stock in an amount equal to 50% of the number of shares of common stock that each advance may be converted into. The warrants have an exercise price of \$0.50 per share, a term of five years and are immediately exercisable upon issuance. The exercise price is subject to adjustment in the event of certain stock dividends and distributions, stock splits, stock combinations, reclassifications or similar events or upon any distributions of assets, including cash, stock or other property to the Company's stockholders (See Note 3).

In accounting for each convertible advance and the warrants issued under the Credit Agreement, the Company allocates the proceeds between the debt host and the freestanding warrants on a relative fair value basis for each advance. On the date of each advance if the effective conversion rate of the debt is less than the market value of the Company's common stock the Company records a beneficial conversion feature as a discount to the debt and an increase to additional paid in capital. The debt discounts related to the warrants, beneficial conversion features and compound derivatives, if any, are being amortized over the term of the Credit Agreement using the effective interest rate method. Amortization of the debt discount is recognized as non-cash interest expense and the compound derivatives related to the contingent interest feature and acceleration upon default provision are remeasured at fair value in subsequent periods in the Company's Condensed Consolidated Balance Sheets.

[Table of Contents](#)

On November 1, 2018, the initial advance under Credit Agreement was made for \$2,000,000 and the Company issued 2,500,000 warrants (See Note 3). In accounting for the convertible advances and warrants under the Credit Agreement \$1,684,920 of the proceeds was allocated to the debt and \$315,080 was allocated to equity classified warrants. A beneficial conversion feature of \$90,080 and a compound derivative liability of \$204,102 were also recorded.

During the six months ended June 30, 2019, the Company initiated two advances under Credit Agreement, each in the amount of \$2,000,000, for an aggregate principal amount of \$4,000,000, and the Company issued an aggregate of 5,000,000 warrants to Emerald Health Sciences (See Note 3). In accounting for the convertible advances and warrants issued under the Credit Agreement, an aggregate amount of \$3,283,890 was allocated to the debt and \$716,110 was allocated to equity classified warrants. A beneficial conversion feature of \$1,584,850 and compound derivative liabilities of an aggregate of \$516,058 have been recorded (See Note 3). Of the \$516,058 in compound derivatives, \$322,644 was recorded as other expense in the Condensed Consolidated Statements of Comprehensive Income (Loss) for the six months ended June 30, 2019 as value of the beneficial conversion feature exceeded the proceeds allocated to the third draw.

Aggregate financing costs of \$63,007 incurred in connection with the Credit Agreement have been recorded as a discount to the debt host and are being amortized using the effective interest rate method and recognized as non-cash interest expense over the term of the Credit Agreement.

As of June 30, 2019, the unamortized debt discount will be amortized over a remaining period of approximately 3.27 years. The fair value of the underlying shares of the convertible multi draw credit agreement was \$4,350,000 at June 30, 2019. As of June 30, 2019, the if-converted value did not exceed the principal balance.

Secured Convertible Promissory Note

On December 28, 2017, the Company entered into a convertible Secured Promissory Note and Security Agreement with Emerald Health Sciences (the "Convertible Promissory Note"). The Convertible Promissory Note provided for aggregate gross proceeds to the Company of up to \$900,000 and was secured by all the Company's assets. Drawdowns on the Convertible Promissory Note were interest bearing at an annual rate of 12% (compounding semi-annually), payable at maturity. The Convertible Promissory Note matured upon the earlier of June 30, 2018 or upon a default event, as defined, and elected by Emerald Health Sciences. At Emerald Health Sciences' election, drawdowns and unpaid interest were convertible into common stock at a conversion price of \$0.10, subject to a full-ratchet antidilution right. The Convertible Promissory Note was automatically converted upon the occurrence of the private placement transaction with Emerald Health Sciences (the Emerald Financing) in January 2018.

The Company received proceeds of \$500,000 on December 28, 2017, and on January 19, 2018 the Company received the remaining \$400,000 in funding as it had satisfied the conditions required. These conditions required receipt of conversion notices from all the existing Series B stockholders to convert their preferred shares to common stock. Such conversions occurred in January and February of 2018. On each financing date, the Company bifurcated a conversion liability from the Convertible Promissory Note related to the embedded conversion feature with a down-round protection provision (See Note 3). This resulted in a conversion liability of \$265,000 at the first financing date which was one trading day prior to December 31, 2017. The second funding in January 2018 resulted in an additional conversion liability of \$360,000. The conversion liabilities were recorded as a discount to the debt at each draw down date and were being amortized to interest expense.

On January 19, 2018, in conjunction with the Emerald Financing (See Note 5), the Convertible Promissory Note was automatically converted into common stock at a conversion price of \$0.10 per share for 9,000,000 shares of common stock. Upon conversion, the debt and associated conversion

liability were extinguished resulting in a loss on extinguishment of \$590,392 which was recorded as other expense for the six months ended June 30, 2018. For the six months ended June 30, 2018, the effective interest rate related to the Convertible Promissory Note was 13.94%.

Common Stock

On November 14, 2018, the Company amended its articles of incorporation to increase the number of authorized shares of common stock available for issuance to 500,000,000.

Emerald Financing

On January 19, 2018, the Company entered into a Securities Purchase Agreement pursuant to which the Company sold to Emerald Health Sciences 15,000,000 shares of common stock and a warrant to purchase 20,400,000 shares of common stock at an exercise price of \$0.10 for aggregate gross proceeds of \$1,500,000 (the “Emerald Financing”). This transaction also resulted in the conversion of the \$900,000 Convertible Promissory Note (See Note 4). As part of the transaction, the Company’s Board members, with the exception of Dr. Brian Murphy, the Company’s CEO/CMO, tendered their resignation and Emerald Health Sciences appointed two new nominees to the Board. The Securities Purchase Agreement also provides that in the case of a subsequent financing in which the purchase price is less than \$0.10 per share, Emerald Health Sciences shall be issued additional shares in order to protect against anti-dilution.

The second closing under the Emerald Financing occurred on February 16, 2018, pursuant to which the Company issued and sold to Emerald Health Sciences 15,000,000 shares of the Company’s common stock, and a warrant to purchase 20,400,000 shares of common stock at an exercise price of \$0.10 per share for a term of five years. In addition, an accredited investor purchased 2,500,000 shares of common stock and a warrant to purchase 3,400,000 shares of common stock at an exercise price of \$0.10 per share for a term of five years. The Company received aggregate gross proceeds of \$1,750,000 from the second closing. In connection with the private placement, the Company incurred issuance costs of \$154,092, of which \$137,192 was allocated to the warrant liability and expensed during the period and \$16,900 was recorded as a reduction to additional paid in capital from the issuance of common stock.

Preferred Stock

The Company has 20,000,000 authorized shares of preferred stock, with a par value of \$0.001 per share. As of June 30, 2019, there were no shares of preferred stock issued and outstanding.

During the six months ended June 30, 2018, all remaining Preferred Series B, D, and F shares that were previously issued and outstanding were converted to common stock.

6. Stock-Based Compensation

Stock Incentive Plan

On October 31, 2014, after the closing of the Merger, the Board approved the Company’s 2014 Omnibus Incentive Plan (the “2014 Plan”). The 2014 Plan initially reserved 3,200,000 shares for future grants, and in October 2018, the Company increased the share reserve under the 2014 Plan to equal 10% of the number of issued and outstanding shares of common stock of the Company. The 2014 Plan authorizes the issuance of awards including stock options, stock appreciation rights, restricted stock, stock units and performance units to employees, directors, and consultants of the Company. As of June 30, 2019, the Company had 9,161,023 shares available for future grant under the 2014 Plan.

[Table of Contents](#)

Stock Options

There was no option activity under the Company's 2014 Plan during the three and six months ended June 30, 2019.

Restricted Stock Awards

There was no restricted stock award ("RSA") activity under the Company's 2014 Plan during the three and six months ended June 30, 2019.

On February 28, 2018, in conjunction with the signing of the K2C separation agreement discussed in Note 8 below, Mr. Lykos' RSAs amounting to 325,000 shares vested immediately resulting in a Type III award modification and a credit to stock compensation of \$98,042 for the three months ended March 31, 2018 due to a lower fair value of those shares as of the modification date.

On May 25, 2018, in conjunction with the signing of her separation agreement, the former Nemus CFO, Ms. Elizabeth Berezcz's RSA's amounting to 350,000 shares vested immediately resulting in a Type III award modification and a credit to stock compensation of \$97,183 for the three and six months ended June 30, 2018 due to a lower fair market value of those shares as of the modification date as compared to the fair value immediately prior to acceleration.

Awards Granted Outside the 2014 Plan

Options

There was no option activity outside of the 2014 Plan during the three and six months ended June 30, 2019.

On May 25, 2018, the Company entered into Stock Option Agreement with Douglas Cesario, CFO, granting 1,195,073, stock options with an exercise price equal to \$0.25 and a grant date fair market value of \$200,172. The options vest 25% on July 23, 2018, and the remaining 75% vest 1/33 on each of the next 33 months thereafter. Options will fully vest upon a Triggering Event, including a Sale of the Company or a Merger that results in change of control.

Restricted Stock Awards

The following is a summary of RSA activity outside of the Company's 2014 Plan during the six months ended June 30, 2019:

	Number of Shares	Weighted Average Grant Date Fair Value
Unvested, December 31, 2018	900,000	\$ 0.19
Granted	-	-

Released	(450,000)	0.19
Unvested, June 30, 2019	<u>450,000</u>	<u>\$ 0.19</u>

[Table of Contents](#)

On February 28, 2018, in conjunction with the signing of the K2C separation agreement discussed in Note 8 below, Mr. Lykos' Restricted stock awards amounting to 900,000 shares became immediately vested resulting in a Type III award modification and stock compensation expense of \$216,000 for the

three months ended March 31, 2018, due to an increase in the fair value of the award immediately before and after the modification date.

On May 25, 2018, in conjunction with the signing of her separation agreement discussed above, the former Nemus CFO, Ms. Elizabeth Berecz's Restricted stock awards amounting to 700,000 shares became immediately vested resulting in the recording of compensation expense of \$184,800 for the three and six months ended June 30, 2018, due to an increase in the fair value of the award immediately before and after the modification date.

Stock-Based Compensation Expense

The Company recognizes stock-based compensation expense using the straight-line method over the requisite service period. For the three months ended June 30, 2019 and 2018, the Company recognized stock-based compensation expense of \$173,084 and \$100,603, respectively (including compensation expense for RSAs discussed above), which was recorded as a general and administrative expense in the Condensed Consolidated Statements of Comprehensive Income (Loss). For the six months ended June 30, 2019 and 2018, the Company recognized stock-based compensation expense of \$344,577 and \$330,212, respectively (including compensation expense for RSAs discussed above), which was recorded as a general and administrative expense in the Condensed Consolidated Statements of Comprehensive Income (Loss). The total amount of unrecognized compensation cost was \$404,304 as of June 30, 2019. This amount will be recognized over a weighted average period of 0.92 years.

7. Significant Contracts - University of Mississippi

UM 5050 Pro-Drug and UM 8930 Analog Agreements

In July 2018, the Company renewed its ocular licenses for UM 5050, related to the pro-drug formulation of tetrahydrocannabinol ("THC"), and UM 8930, related to an analog formulation of cannabidiol ("CBD"). On May 24, 2019, the ocular delivery licenses were replaced by "all fields of use" licenses for both UM 5050 and UM 8930 (the "License Agreements"). Pursuant to these license agreements, UM granted the Company an exclusive, perpetual license, including, with the prior written consent of UM, the right to sublicense, to intellectual property related to UM 5050 and UM 8930 for all fields of use.

The License Agreements contain certain milestone payments, royalty and sublicensing fees payable by the Company, as defined therein. Each License Agreement provides for an annual maintenance fee of \$75,000 payable on the anniversary of the effective date. The upfront payment for UM 5050 is \$100,000 and the upfront payment for UM 8930 is \$200,000. Additionally, there is also a \$200,000 fee due within 30 days upon receipt of the first United States Patent and Trademark Office Notice of Allowance for UM 8930. The milestone payments payable for each license are as follows:

- i) \$100,000 paid within 30 days following the submission of the first Investigational New Drug Application to the Food and Drug Administration or an equivalent application to a regulatory agency anywhere in the world, for a product;
- ii) \$200,000 paid within 30 days following the first submission of an NDA, or an equivalent application to a regulatory agency anywhere in the world, for each product that is administered in a different route of administration from that of the early submitted product(s); and
- iii) \$400,000 paid within 30 days following the approval of an NDA, or an equivalent application to a regulatory agency anywhere in the world, for each product that is administered in a different route of administration from that of the early approved product(s).

The royalty percentage due on net sales under each License Agreement is in the mid-single digits. The Company must also pay to UM a portion of all licensing fees received from any sublicensees, subject to a minimum royalty on net sales, and the Company is required to reimburse patent costs incurred by UM related to the licensed products. The royalty obligations apply by country and by licensed product, and end upon the later of the date that no valid claim of a licensed patent covers a licensed product in a given country, or 10 years after the first commercial sale of such licensed product in such country.

[Table of Contents](#)

Each License Agreement continues, unless terminated, until the later of the expiration of the last to expire of the patents or patent applications within the licensed technology or the expiration of our payment obligations under the License Agreement. UM may terminate each License Agreement, by giving written notice of termination, upon the Company's material breach of the License Agreement, including failure to make payments or satisfy covenants, representations or warranties without cure, noncompliance, a bankruptcy event, the Company's dissolution or cessation of operations, the Company's failure to make reasonable efforts to commercialize at least one product or failure to keep at least one product on the market after the first commercial sale for a continuous period of one year, other than for reasons outside the Company's control, or the Company's failure to meet certain pre-established development milestones. The Company may terminate each License Agreement upon 60 days' written notice to UM.

UM 5070 License Agreement

In January 2017, we entered into a license agreement with UM pursuant to which UM granted us an exclusive, perpetual license, including the right to sublicense, to intellectual property related to a platform of cannabinoid-based molecules ("UM 5070"), to research, develop and commercialize products for the treatment of infectious diseases. The license agreement culminates roughly one year of screening and target molecule identification studies especially focused on therapy-resistant infectious organisms like Methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* ("MRSA").

We paid UM an upfront license fee under the license agreement. Under the license agreement, we are also responsible for annual maintenance fees that will be credited against royalties in the current fiscal year, contingent milestone payments upon achievement of development and regulatory milestones, and royalties on net sales of licensed products sold for commercial use. The aggregate milestone payments due under the license agreement if all the milestones are achieved is \$700,000 and the royalty percentage due on net sales is in the mid-single digits. We must also pay UM a percentage of all licensing fees we receive from any sublicensees, subject to a minimum royalty on net sales by such sublicensees. Our royalty obligations apply on a country by country and licensed product by licensed product basis, and end upon the later of the date that no valid claim of a licensed patent covers a licensed product in a given country, or ten years after first commercial sale of such licensed product in such country.

The license agreement continues, unless terminated, until the later of the expiration of the last to expire of the patents or patent applications within the licensed technology or expiration of our payment obligations under the license. UM may terminate the license agreement, effective upon giving notice, if: (a) we fail to pay any material amount payable to UM under the license agreement and do not cure such failure within 60 days after UM notifies us of such failure, (b) we materially breach any covenant, representation or warranty in the license agreement and do not cure such breach within 60 days after UM notifies us of such breach, (c) we fail to comply in any material respect with the terms of the license and do not cure such noncompliance within 60 days after UM notifies us of such failure, (d) we are subject to a bankruptcy event, (e) we dissolve or cease operations or (f) if after the first commercial sale of a product during the term of the license agreement, we materially fail to make reasonable efforts to commercialize at least one product or fail to keep at least one product on the market after the first commercial sale for a continuous period of one year, other than for reasons outside our control. We may terminate the license agreement upon 60 days' written notice to UM.

8. Related Party Matters

K2C, Inc.

In June 2014, our subsidiary entered into an independent contractor agreement with K2C, Inc. ("K2C"), which is wholly owned by the Company's former Executive Chairman and Co-Founder, Mr. Cosmas N. Lykos, pursuant to which the Company paid K2C a monthly fee for services performed by Mr. Lykos for the Company. The agreement expired on June 1, 2017 and was automatically renewed for one year pursuant to the terms of the agreement. The monthly fee under the agreement was \$10,000 and increased to \$20,000 effective April 1, 2017.

[Table of Contents](#)

In February 2018, the Company entered into a separation and release agreement with K2C, which provided for a lump sum payment of \$180,000 and the immediate vesting of 900,000 shares of restricted common stock granted on January 18, 2018, 325,000 shares of restricted common stock granted on October 20, 2015, and 125,000 options granted on November 21, 2014, in exchange for a release of claims and certain other agreements. During the six months ended June 30, 2018, the Company recognized additional stock-based compensation expense of \$112,270 for these restricted stock and option awards.

For the three and six months ended June 30, 2018, total expense incurred under this agreement was \$-0- and \$220,000 (including the previously discussed lump sum payment), respectively. For the three and six months ended June 30, 2019, no expense was incurred under this agreement. Under the separation agreement, Mr. Lykos was allowed to participate in the Company's health, death and disability insurance plans for six months subsequent to K2C's separation.

Emerald Health Sciences

On February 1, 2018, the Company entered into an Independent Contractor Agreement with Emerald Health Sciences, pursuant to which Emerald Health Sciences agreed to provide such services as are mutually agreed between the Company and Emerald Health Sciences, including reimbursement for reasonable expenses incurred in the performance of the Independent Contractor Agreement. These services can include, but are not limited to, corporate advisory services and technical expertise in the areas of business development, marketing, investor relations, information technology and product development. The Independent Contractor Agreement has an initial term of 10 years and specifies compensation which is agreed upon between the Company's Chief Executive Officer and Emerald Health Sciences' Chairman, CEO and President on a month-to-month basis. The fee due under this agreement is payable on a monthly basis; however, if the Company is unable to make payments due to insufficient funds, then interest on the outstanding balance will accrue at a rate of 12% per annum, calculated semi-annually. Under this agreement, for the three months ended June 30, 2019 and 2018, the Company incurred expenses of \$150,000 in each period. For the six months ended June 30, 2019 and 2018, the Company incurred expenses of \$300,000 and \$250,000, respectively.

On February 6, 2018, the Company entered into a Consulting Agreement with Dr. Avtar Dhillon, the Chairman, Chief Executive Officer and President of Emerald Health Sciences. The services under the Consulting Agreement included corporate finance and strategic business advisory services. The Consulting Agreement had an initial term of one year and was renewable automatically unless terminated by either party. The agreement specified an annual fee of \$60,000, payable semi-monthly in installments, and included reimbursement for reasonable expenses incurred in the performance of the services. Under the agreement, Dr. Avtar Dhillon was also entitled to a discretionary annual bonus, payable 120 days after each fiscal year end, to be determined by the Board upon its annual review. Under this agreement, for the three and six months ended June 30, 2018, the Company incurred \$15,000 and \$30,000, respectively. The Consulting Agreement was canceled on October 5, 2018 in connection with the Company's entry into the Credit Agreement with Emerald Health Sciences (See Note 4), and Dr. Avtar Dhillon was appointed as the Executive Chairman of the Company's Board.

9. Subsequent Events

Contract Manufacturer Change for THCVHS

The Company previously entered into a letter agreement with Albany Molecular Research, Inc. ("AMRI"), dated as of July 31, 2018, for the manufacture of THCVHS. On July 8, 2019, the Company notified AMRI of its intent to terminate the letter agreement, effective on August 7, 2019.

On August 7, 2019, the Company entered into a first amendment to the master development and clinical supply agreement dated as of February 25, 2019 (the "Noramco Agreement"), by and between the Company and Noramco, Inc. ("Noramco") to manufacture THCVHS. CBDVHS was previously being manufactured pursuant to the Noramco Agreement. The Company will pay \$257,800 upfront to add the manufacture of THCVHS to the Noramco Agreement and additional payments will be made upon Noramco shipping of the GMP active pharmaceutical ingredient to the Company. All other material terms of the Noramco Agreement remain the same.

Events subsequent to original issuance of condensed consolidated financial statements (unaudited)

In connection with the reissuance of the condensed consolidated financial statements, the Company evaluated subsequent events through October 22, 2019, the date on which the condensed consolidated financial statements were available to be reissued.

Subsequent to the quarterly report on Form 10-Q for the period ended June 30, 2019, filed with the SEC on August 9, 2019, the following events occurred:

Engagement of Clinical Research Organization in Advance of Clinical Trials

In August 2019, EMBI Australia Pty Ltd entered into a start-up agreement with Novotech (Australia) Pty Limited ("Novotech"). The start-up agreement is being entered into in connection with the launch of the Company's first in-human studies of its lead drug candidate, NB1111, to be conducted in healthy volunteers and patients with glaucoma and ocular hypertension (the "Clinical Trial"). The Company expects to pay approximately \$65,840 AUD in professional fees and pass through costs in connection with the services provided for in the start-up agreement. Additionally, on September 26, 2019, the EMBI Australia Pty Ltd and Novotech executed a Master Services Agreement and anticipate entering into project agreements covering all anticipated services to be provided by Novotech to the Company in connection with the Clinical Trial.

Appointment of New Chief Medical Officer

Effective August 21, 2019, Emerald Bioscience, Inc. (the "Company") appointed Dr. Dennis Kim as Chief Medical Officer of the Company. Until Dr. Kim's appointment, Dr. Brian Murphy, the Company's Chief Executive Officer, served as the Company's Chief Medical Officer.

[Table of Contents](#)

EMERALD BIOSCIENCE, INC.

**Up to an aggregate of 67,400,000 Units, each consisting of
One Share of Common Stock and
One Warrant to purchase one share of Common Stock**

PROSPECTUS

**Emerald Bioscience, Inc.
130 North Marina Drive
Long Beach, CA 90803
(949) 336-3443**

November 13, 2019

F-61